

HANDBOOK



PEUGEOT 508



PEUGEOT

Access to the Handbook



From the appropriate Store, download the **Scan MyPeugeot APP** smartphone application.

Then select:

- the vehicle,
- the print edition appropriate for the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.

Download the content of the vehicle's **Handbook**.



The **Handbook** is available on the PEUGEOT website, in the "MY PEUGEOT" section or at the following address:
<http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/APddb/>

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.



Access to the **Handbook**.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Peugeot 508.

This document presents the information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only. Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical data, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

In this document you will find all of the instructions and recommendations on use that will allow you to enjoy your vehicle to the fullest. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it as well as the Warranty and Maintenance Record which will provide you with information about warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with your vehicle.

Key



Safety warning



Additional information



Contributes to the protection of the environment



Left-hand drive vehicle



Right-hand drive vehicle



Location of the equipment/button described with a black zone



Overview	4
Instruments and controls	4

Eco-driving	
-------------	--

Instruments	1
Head-up digital screen	8
Warning and indicator lamps	10
Indicators	23
Manual test	26
Distance recorder	26
Lighting dimmer	27
Trip computer	27
Touch screen	29
Date and time adjustment	34

Access	2
Remote control	35
Keyless Entry and Starting	37
Back-up procedures	41
Central locking	43
Anti-intrusion security	43
Alarm	44
Doors	46
Boot	47
Hands-free tailgate	48
Electric windows	52
Panoramic sunroof	53

Ease of use and comfort	3
Driving position	56
Front seats	57
Steering wheel adjustment	61
Mirrors	61
Rear seats	63
i-Cockpit® Amplify function	64
Heating and Ventilation	65
Automatic dual-zone air conditioning	67
Recirculation of the interior air	70
Front demist – defrost	70
Heated windscreen	71
Rear screen demist – defrost	71
Additional Heating/Ventilation	72
Front fittings	74
Touch-sensitive courtesy lamps	79
Interior ambient lighting	79
Rear fittings	80
Boot fittings	81

Lighting and visibility	4
Exterior lighting control stalk	86
Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps	87
Direction indicators	87
Headlamp adjustment	88
Automatic illumination of headlamps	89
Guide-me-home lighting	89
Automatic headlamp dipping	90
Static cornering lighting	92
Night Vision	92
Wiper control stalk	94
Changing a wiper blade	96
Automatic windscreen wipers	96

Safety	5
General safety recommendations	98
Hazard warning lamps	98
Horn	99
Emergency or assistance call	99
Electronic stability control (ESC)	100
Seat belts	103
Airbags	105
Active bonnet	109
Child seats	110
Deactivating the front passenger airbag	112
ISOFIX mountings and child seats	118
i-Size child seats	121
Child lock	122

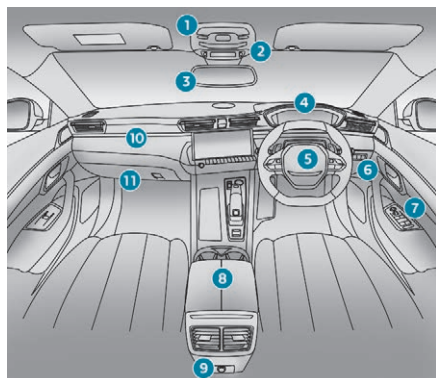
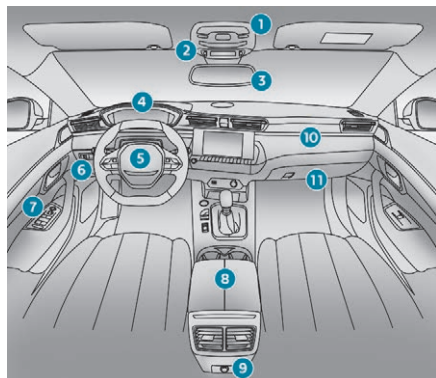
6789

□

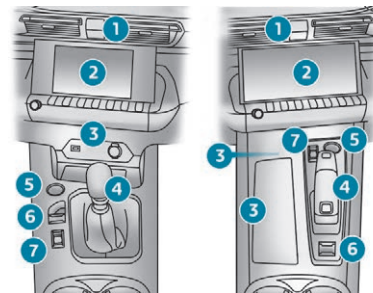


bit.ly/helpPSA

Instruments and controls

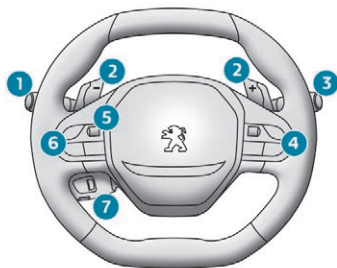


1. Sunroof and blind controls
Touch-sensitive courtesy lamp/Front touch-sensitive reading lamps
2. Warning lamp display for the seat belts and front passenger airbag
Emergency call/Assistance call
3. Rear view mirror
4. Head-up digital screen
5. Horn
Driver front airbag
6. Side switch panel/Ticket holder
7. Door mirror and electric window control panel
8. Front armrest
Auxiliary (Jack) socket
9. 12 V socket or USB sockets
10. Front passenger airbag
11. Glove box



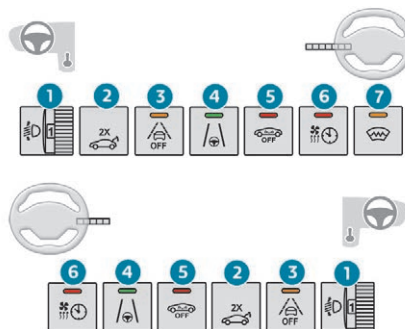
1. Hazard warning lamps
Central locking
2. 8" (PEUGEOT Connect Radio) or 10" HD (PEUGEOT Connect Nav) touch screen
3. 12 V socket/USB socket(s)
Storage
Wireless smartphone charger
4. Gearbox control
5. Starting/Switching off the engine "START/STOP"
6. Electric parking brake
7. "DRIVE MODE" selector.

Steering mounted controls



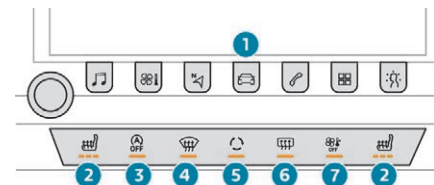
1. External lighting/direction indicator control stalk
2. Automatic gearbox control paddles
3. Wiper/screenwash/trip computer controls
4. Audio system adjustment controls
5. Instrument panel display mode selection wheel
6. Voice synthesis control
Volume adjustment
7. Controls for Speed limiter/Cruise control/
Adaptive cruise control

Side switch panel



1. Halogen headlamp beam height adjustment
2. Hands-free tailgate
3. Active Lane Keeping Assistance
4. Lane Positioning Assist
5. Alarm
6. Programmable Heating/Ventilation
7. Heated windscreen

Centre switch panel



1. 8" (PEUGEOT Connect Radio) or 10" HD (PEUGEOT Connect Nav) touch screen controls
i-Cockpit® Amplify function
2. Heated seats
3. Stop & Start
4. Windscreen and front windows demist
5. Recirculation of interior air
6. Rear screen defrost
7. Automatic air conditioning

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration, change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions and also help reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind and window blinds, etc.).

Unless it has automatic regulation, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if these are not automatically managed.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel. Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items at the back of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably, use a roof box.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, cabin filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting. As soon as possible, visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to make your vehicle's level of nitrogen oxides emissions compliant to the standard.

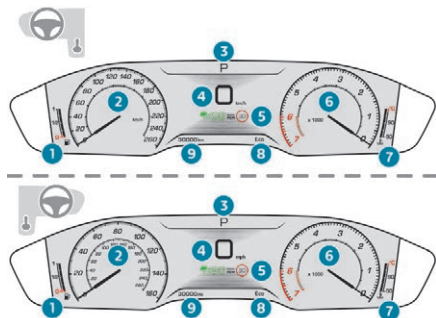
When filling the tank, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle to avoid overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Head-up digital screen

Customisable digital instrument panel. Depending on the selected display mode, some information may be hidden or shown in a different way.

The representation below shows the "DIALS" display mode.



1. Fuel gauge.
2. Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).
3. Gear shift indicator.
Gear with an automatic gearbox.
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Cruise control or speed limiter setting, display of speed limit signs.

6. Rev counter (x 1000 rpm).
7. Engine coolant temperature indicator (°Celsius).
8. Selected driving mode (other than "Normal" mode).
9. Total distance recorder (miles or km).

Displays

Some lamps have a fixed location, the others can alter location.

For certain functions that have indicator lamps for both operation and for deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

Permanent information

Whatever the display mode selected, the instrument panel displays:

- in fixed locations:
 - gearbox and gear shift indicator information,
 - the fuel gauge,
 - the engine coolant temperature indicator,
 - the driving mode,
 - the total distance recorder.
- in variable locations:
 - the digital speedometer,
 - status or alert messages displayed temporarily.

Optional information

Depending on the display mode selected and active features, additional information can be displayed:

- the rev counter,
- the trip computer,
- driving aids,
- the speed limiter or cruise control,
- the media currently playing,
- navigation instructions,
- engine information with Sport mode,
- Night Vision function screen, etc.

Customisation of the instrument panel

You can modify the appearance of the instrument panel, by choosing:

- the instrument panel display colour (with i-Cockpit® Amplify function),
- a display mode.

Display language and units

They depend on the configuration of the touch screen.

When travelling abroad, the speed must be shown in the official units of the country you are driving in (mph, miles or km/h, km).

! As a safety measure, these adjustments must be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Choosing a display colour

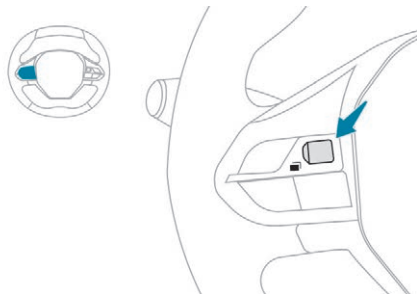
This depends on the ambience activated by the i-Cockpit® Amplify function. Depending on version, it can be selected in the setting of a profile in the **Settings** menu of the touch screen.

The possible choices are:

- ☞ "Relax": grey,
- ☞ "Boost": red,
- ☞ "Normal" (no ambience activated): blue.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit® Amplify function**, refer to the corresponding section.

Choice of display mode



To modify the display mode of the instrument panel:

- ☞ Turn the knob located to the left of the steering wheel to display and scroll through the different modes on the right-hand side of the instrument panel.
- ☞ Once the selected display mode appears, press on the knob to validate.

If the knob is not moved, the selected display mode is automatically applied after a few moments.

Each mode corresponds to the type of information displayed in the instrument panel.

- "DIALS": standard display of the analogue and digital speedometers, the rev counter, the fuel gauge, the engine coolant temperature indicator and the total distance recorder.
- "NAVIGATION": standard display, additionally showing the current navigation information (map and navigation instructions).
- "DRIVING": standard display, additionally showing the current driving aid systems information.
- "NIGHT VISION": standard display, additionally showing the display of the infrared camera image (associated with the Night Vision function).

- "MINIMAL": minimal display with digital speedometer and the total distance recorder and, in the event of a warning only, the fuel gauge and the engine coolant temperature indicator.
- "PERSONAL": minimal display and possibility of selecting optional information to be displayed in the customisable areas on the left and right.

To enter settings for the "PERSONAL" display mode and select the information to be displayed in the customisable areas of the instrument panel:

With 8" touch screen

- ☞ Press **Settings** in the upper banner of the touch screen.
- ☞ Select **"Configuration"**.
- ☞ Select **"Instrument panel personalisation"**.



With 10" HD touch screen



- ☞ Press **Settings** in the side banner of the touch screen.

- ☞ Select "**OPTIONS**".



- ☞ Select "**Instrument panel personalisation**".

- ☞ For each customised displayed area, left and right, select a type of information using the corresponding scroll arrows in the touch screen:

- "Driving aids".
- "Empty".
- "Engine info" (Sport mode),
- "G-metres" (Sport mode),
- "Temperatures" (engine oil).
- "Media".
- "Navigation".
- "Trip computer",
- "Rev counter".
- "Night vision".

- ☞ Confirm to save and quit.

If the current display mode is "PERSONAL", the new selection is displayed immediately.

! As a safety measure, these adjustments must be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp can be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.

Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.

For more information on equipment or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Persistent warning lamp

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of a red or orange warning lamp indicates a fault that needs further investigation, using any associated message and the description of the warning lamp in the documentation.

Where a lamp remains lit

The references **(1)**, **(2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.

(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lamps

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations	
Red warning/indicator lamps				
	STOP	Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	Indicates a serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering, automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	Maximum engine coolant temperature	Fixed.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up to the required level if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
	Engine oil pressure	Fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	Battery charge	Fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).	Carry out (1). If the electric parking brake does not work, immobilise the vehicle: ☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, put the chocks against one of the wheels. Clean and retighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Door(s) open	Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door.	If one of the doors or the tailgate is not fully closed (speed below 6 mph [10 km/h]).	
		Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal.	If one of the doors or the tailgate is not fully closed (speed above 6 mph [10 km/h]).	
	Seat belt not fastened/unfastened	Fixed or flashing accompanied by an audible signal.	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.	
	Electric parking brake	Fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied.	
		Flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	Carry out (1): park on level ground (horizontally). With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in mode P . Switch off the ignition and carry out (2).
	Brakes	Fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	Carry out (1), then top up with brake fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
		Fixed.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.	Carry out (1) and then (2).

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
Orange warning/indicator lamps			
	Service	Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more minor faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel. You can deal with certain anomalies yourself, for example an open door or the start of saturation of the particle filter. For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).
		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more major faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel, then carry out (3).
		Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable. Carry out (2).
 + 		Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.	Service is overdue. Only with BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.

(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
 Diesel engine preheating	Temporarily on. (up to approximately 30 seconds in severe weather conditions)	When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. When the warning lamp goes off, starting is immediate if you press and hold: - the clutch pedal with a manual gearbox, - the brake pedal with an automatic gearbox. If the engine does not start, make the engine starting request again, while keeping your foot on the pedal.
 Low fuel level	Fixed, with the reserve level shown in red, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	When it first comes on, there remains approximately 6 litres of fuel in the tank (reserve). Until the fuel level is topped up, this alert will be repeated every time the ignition is switched on, at increased frequency as the fuel level goes down and comes close to zero.	Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel. Never drive until completely empty , this could damage the emissions and injection systems.
 Engine self-diagnostic system	Flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. Carry out (2) without fail .
	Fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. Carry out (3) quickly.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	AdBlue®	On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the remaining driving range.	Top up the AdBlue®.
		Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	Top up the AdBlue® as soon as possible , or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	You must top up the AdBlue® to avoid starting being prevented , or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2). It is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	SCR emissions control system	Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the Ignition, associated with the fixed Service and Engine self-diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	Depending on the message displayed, you can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine starting prevention system is triggered.
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and Engine self-diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	To start the engine, carry out (2).
	Deactivation of the automatic functions (with electric parking brake)	Fixed.	Carry out (3) if automatic application/release is no longer possible. The brake can be applied or released manually.
	Automatic application (with electric parking brake)	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	The automatic application is not available, the parking brake can only be used manually. Use the electric parking brake control lever. If automatic release is also not available, use manual release.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Malfunction (with electric parking brake)	Fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault. Carry out (3) quickly.
 + 		Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	You can no longer immobilise the vehicle with the engine running. If manual application and release are not working, the electric parking brake control lever is faulty. The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of failure of the control lever. Carry out (2).
 +  + 		Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	The parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working. When stationary, to immobilise your vehicle: ☞ Pull and hold the control lever for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the lamp comes on in the instrument panel. If this procedure does not work, secure your vehicle: ☞ Park on a level surface. ☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, select P , then put the supplied chocks supplied against one of the wheels. Then carry out (2).
	Braking	Fixed.	A minor fault with the braking system. Drive carefully. Carry out (3).

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
 Distance Alert/ Active Safety Brake	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The system has been deactivated via the the touch screen (Driving/Vehicle menu).	
	Flashing.	The system is operating.	The vehicle brakes briefly so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.
	Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
 Distance Alert/ Active Safety Brake	Fixed.	The system has a fault.	If these lamps come on after the engine is switched off and restarted, carry out (3).
 Anti-lock braking system (ABS)	Fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).
 Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)	Fixed.	The system is deactivated.	The DSC/ASR system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is started, and from around 31 mph (50 km/h). Below 31 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate it manually.
 Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)	Flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is activated if there is a loss of grip or trajectory.	
	Fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Carry out (3).

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Emergency brake fault (with electric parking brake)	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	Emergency braking does not have full power. If automatic release is not available, use manual release.
	Hill start assist	Fixed.	The system has a fault. Carry out (3).
	Active Lane Keeping Assistance	Fixed.	The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.
		Flashing.	You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.
		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault. Carry out (3).
	Lane Positioning Assist	Fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The system has a fault. Carry out (3).

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Fixed.	One of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners is faulty.	Carry out (3).
		The active bonnet is triggered.	Do not touch the bonnet. Call a roadside assistance provider or carry out (3) while driving no faster than 19 mph (30 km/h).
	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is activated. The control is in the "ON" position.	In this case, do NOT install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat – Risk of serious injury!
	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The control is in the "OFF" position.	You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).
	Fixed.	The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.
	Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.	The tyre pressure monitoring system is faulty.	Under-inflation detection is no longer assured. As soon as possible, check the pressure of the tyres and carry out (3).
	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Stop & Start	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The Stop & Start system is deactivated manually.
		Fixed.	The Stop & Start system is deactivated automatically.
	Night Vision	Fixed.	The system has been activated, but the vehicle is travelling too fast or the exterior temperature conditions are outside the operating range.
			The display is available with the "Night vision" mode but the system does not emit an alert.
	Rear foglamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.

Green warning/indicator lamps

	Stop & Start	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.
		Flashing temporarily.	STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.
	Park Assist or Full Park Assist	Fixed.	The function is active.
	Lane Positioning Assist	Fixed.	The function has been activated.
			All the conditions have been met: the system is operating.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
 Automatic wiper	Fixed.	Automatic windscreen wiping is activated.	
 Night Vision	Fixed.	The function has been activated.	All the conditions have been met: the system is operating.
 Direction indicators	Flashing with audible signal.	The direction indicators are on.	
 Sidelamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
 Dipped beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
 Automatic headlamp dipping	Fixed.	The function has been activated in the touch screen (Driving/Vehicle menu). The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.	
Blue warning/indicator lamps			
 Main beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	

Indicators

Service indicator

The service indicator is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the vehicle version:

- the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the sign "-".

- an alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

i The distance indicated (in miles or kilometres) is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service. The alert may be triggered close to a due date.

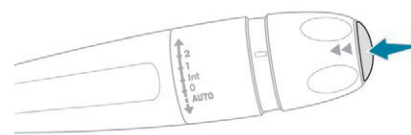
Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/ Observations
	Service spanner	Lights up temporarily when the ignition is switched on.	Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.
		Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	The service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).
	Service spanner flashing	Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on. (For BlueHDi Diesel versions, associated with the Service warning lamp).	The servicing interval has been exceeded. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.



- ☞ Press the button located at the end of the **wiper control stalk and hold it down.**
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; a temporary display window appears and a countdown begins.
- ☞ When the display indicates =0, release the button; the spanner disappears.

i If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information



The service information can be accessed via the "**Check/Diagnostics**" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version.)

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds after switching the ignition on, after the servicing information.

i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Low oil level

This is indicated by the display of a message prompting you to top up, accompanied by the Service warning lamp and an audible signal. If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil level indicator fault

This is signalled by the display of the "**Oil level measurement invalid**" message in the instrument panel.

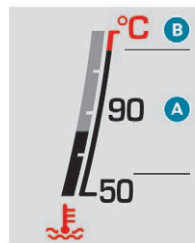
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.

If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Engine coolant temperature gauge



With the engine running:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; this warning lamp and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on in red in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

! After switching off the ignition, open the bonnet cautiously and check the coolant level.

i For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

AdBlue® range indicators

These range indicators are present only on BlueHDi Diesel versions.

Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Range greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km)

When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically.



The range information can be accessed via the **Check/Diagnostics** button in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Remaining range between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on for about thirty seconds, accompanied by a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.

Remaining range between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres. When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 62 miles (100 km) until the level is topped up. It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

Remaining range less than 62 miles (100 km)



When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 6 miles (10 km) until the AdBlue tank is topped up. It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the display of the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible".

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

! To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

! A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from **685 miles (1,100 km)** after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault



These warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".

The alert is triggered when driving when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

- i** If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the SCR system.

During the permitted driving phase (between 685 and 0 miles (1,100 and 0 km))



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 31 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 200 miles) indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR emissions control system persists.

The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You should go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Otherwise you will not be able to restart the vehicle.

Starting prevented



Each time the ignition is switched on, these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

- !** You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual test

This function allows you to check certain indicators and display the alerts log.



It can be accessed via the **Check/ Diagnostics** button in the **Driving/ Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

If necessary, the following information is displayed in the instrument panel:

- the engine oil level,
- when the next service is due,
- the driving range for the AdBlue and the SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel versions,
- current alerts.



- This information is also displayed automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

Distance recorder

The total mileage is displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.



- When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (km or miles): the display of road speed must be in the official units for the country (km/h or mph). The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Total distance recorder

It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

Lighting dimmer

This system allows the brightness of the instruments and controls to be adjusted to suit the ambient light level.

With 8" touch screen



- Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.



- Select "**Brightness**".



- Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

The settings are applied instantly.

- Press outside the settings window to exit.

You can also switch off the screen:



- Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.



- Select "**Dark**".

The screen goes off completely.

- Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to activate it.

With 10" HD touch screen



- Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.

- Select "**OPTIONS**".



- Select "**Screen configuration**".

- Select the "**Brightness**" tab.



- Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

OK

- Press this button to save and exit.

You can also switch off the screen:



- Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.



- Select "**Switch off screen**".

The screen goes off completely.

- Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to activate it.

Trip computer

Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

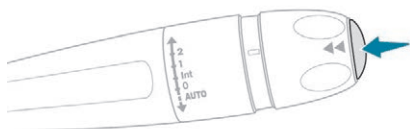
Display of data in the instrument panel



50	5.8	207

Trip computer data is displayed permanently when you select the "PERSONAL" display mode.

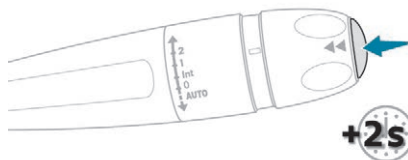
In all other display modes, pressing the end of the wiper control stalk will cause this data to appear temporarily in a specific window.



☞ Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** to display the various tabs in succession.

- Current information with:
 - the range,
 - the current fuel consumption,
 - the Stop & Start time counter.
- Trip "1" with:
 - the average speed,
 - the average fuel consumption,
 - the distance travelled,
 for the first trip.
- Trip "2" with:
 - the average speed,
 - the average fuel consumption,
 - the distance travelled,
 for the second trip.

Trip reset



☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than 2 seconds.

Trips "1" and "2" are independent and are used identically.

A few definitions...

Range

(miles or km)



The distance which can be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (at the average fuel consumption seen over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

i This value may fluctuate if a change of driving style or terrain results in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).

! If dashes instead of figures continue to be displayed when driving, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or km/l or l/100 km)



Calculated over the last few seconds.

i This function is only displayed from 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or km/l or l/100 km)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter



(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter adds up the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Touch screen

This system gives access to:

- the permanent display of the time and the exterior temperature (a blue symbol appears when there is a risk of ice),
- the heating/air conditioning controls,
- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,
- the display of visual manoeuvring aids (visual parking sensor information, Park Assist, etc.),
- Internet services and the display of associated information.

and, depending on equipment, allows:

- access to the navigation system controls and the display of associated information.

! For safety reasons, the vehicle must always be stationary for the driver to perform operations that require close attention.

Some functions are not accessible when driving.

Recommendations

This screen is of the capacitive type.

Use is possible in all temperatures.

Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.

Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.

Use a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Principles

Use the buttons arranged below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Some menus may display across two pages: press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the second page.

i After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

To deactivate or activate a function, select **"OFF"** or **"ON"**.



Use this button to adjust the settings for a function.



Use this button for access to additional information on a function.

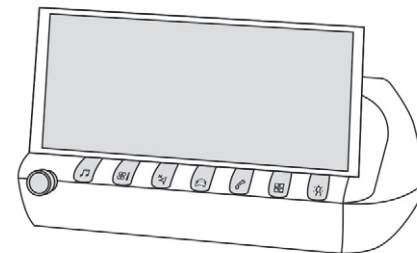
OK

Use this button to confirm.



Use this button to return to the previous page.

Menus



Radio Media.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Air conditioning.

Settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on **Automatic dual-zone air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding section.



Connected navigation.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Driving or Vehicle.*

Activation, deactivation and settings of certain functions.

The functions accessible from this menu are arranged on two tabs: "**Driving functions**" and "**Vehicle settings**".



Telephone.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Applications.

Direct access to certain **equipment of the i-Cockpit® Amplify** function.

For the other functions, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



i-Cockpit® Amplify function.

Personalisation of the driving ambience.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit® Amplify function**, refer to the corresponding section.

or



Settings.

Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and digital instrument panel.



You can also press with three fingers on the touch screen to show all of the menu buttons.



Volume adjustment/mute.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Information banner(s)

Certain information is displayed permanently in the side or upper banner(s) of the touch screen (depending on version).

Top banner of the 8" touch screen

- Time and exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice).
- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the shortcut menu.

- Reminder of the **Radio Media** and **Telephone** menu information.
- Notifications.
- Access to the **Settings** of the touch screen and digital instrument panel (date/time, languages, units, etc.).

Side banners of the 10" HD touch screen

Left-hand side

- Exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice).
- Access to the **Settings** of the touch screen and digital instrument panel (date/time, languages, units, etc.).
- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the shortcut menu.

Right-hand side

- Time.
- Notifications.
- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the shortcut menu.

* Depending on equipment.

Driving/Vehicle menu

"Driving functions" tab

Function	Comments
"Park Assist"	Activation of the Park Assist function.
"Automatic headlamp dipping"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Visual parking assistance"	Activation of the Visiopark 2 function.
"Parking sensors"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Traction control"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Under-inflation detection reset"	Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system.
"Night vision"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Check/Diagnostics"	Reminder of the due date, the engine oil level, the AdBlue range and the inflation status of the tyres. Summary of current alerts.
"Speed settings"	Activation/deactivation of the function. Selection and modification of speed thresholds for the programmable speed limiter and cruise control only.

i For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

"Vehicle settings" tab

Families	Functions
 "Parking"	- "Rear wiper in reverse": activation/deactivation of the rear wiper linked to reverse gear (SW). - "Prevent folding mirrors": activation/deactivation of the automatic door mirror folding/unfolding when locking/unlocking. - "Mirror adaptation in reverse": activation/deactivation of the automatic door mirror tilt when engaging reverse gear.
 "Lamps"/ "Headlamps and lamps"	- "Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of automatic guide-me-home lighting and duration adjustment. - "Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of exterior welcome lighting and duration adjustment. - "Adaptive rear lighting": activation/deactivation of the 3D adaptive rear lighting. - "Directional lighting": activation/deactivation of the static cornering lighting.
 "Comfort"	- "Ambient lighting": activation/deactivation of ambient lighting and adjustment of brightness. - "Unlocking: driver's door only": activation/deactivation of selective unlocking of the driver's door. - "Unlocking: boot only": activation/deactivation of selective unlocking of the tailgate. - "Motorised tailgate/opening": activation/deactivation of motorised operation of the tailgate. - "Hands-free tailgate/opening": activation/deactivation of the tailgate hands-free function.
 "Security"	- "Speed limit recognition/recommendation": activation/deactivation of the speed limit recognition and recommendation system. - "Fatigue Detection System": activation/deactivation of the driver fatigue detection system. - "Detection of road signs": activation/deactivation of extended recognition of road signs. - "Distance alert and automatic braking": activation/deactivation of the distance alert and automatic emergency braking. - "Blind spot sensors": activation/deactivation of blind spot detection.

 For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

"Settings" menu

8" touch screen



The functions available through the upper banner are detailed in the table below.

Button	Comments
	Turn off the screen (black screen). To return to the current screen, press the black screen or one of the menu buttons.
	Adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls.
	Choice and settings for three user profiles.
	Settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.
	Privacy settings for personal data and/or location.
	Activation and configuration of the settings for the Wi-Fi (depending on availability).

Settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel

Button	Comments
	Adjustment of the display parameters (text scrolling, animations, etc.) and the brightness of instruments and controls.
	Choice of units: - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit), - distances and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).
	Choice of display language on the touch screen and digital instrument panel.
	Setting the date and time.
	Choice of the type of information displayed in the digital instrument panel.

10" HD touch screen



The functions available through the left-hand side banner are detailed in the table below.

Button	Comments
	Selection of a colour scheme.
	Audio settings (sound ambience, distribution, level, voice volume, ringer volume).
	Turns the screen off.
OPTIONS	Settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

Settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel

Button	Comments
	Choice of units: - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit), - distances and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l). Privacy settings for personal data and/or location.
	Choice of display language on the touch screen and digital instrument panel.
	Setting the date and time. Option of synchronisation with GPS.
	Adjustment of the display parameters (text scrolling, animations, etc.) and the brightness of instruments and controls.
	Choice and settings for three user profiles.
	Choice of the type of information displayed in the digital instrument panel.

Date and time adjustment

With PEUGEOT Connect Radio



- Select the **Settings** menu in the upper banner of the touch screen.

- Select "**System configuration**".



- Select "**Date and time**".

- Select "**Date**" or "**Time**".
- Choose the display formats.
- Change the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- Confirm with "**OK**".

With PEUGEOT Connect Nav

Setting of the time and date is only available if synchronisation with the GPS is deactivated.



- Select the **Settings** menu in the banner of the touch screen.

- Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



- Select "**Setting the time-date**".

- Select the "**Date**" or "**Time**" tab.
- Set the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- Confirm with "**OK**".

Additional settings

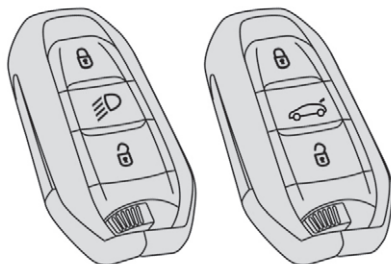
You can choose:

- To change the time zone.
- To change the display format of the date and time (12h/24h).
- To activate or deactivate the summer time management function (+1 hour).
- To activate or deactivate the synchronisation with the GPS (UTC).

i The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

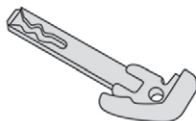
Remote control

General points



The remote control can be used for the following functions, depending on version:

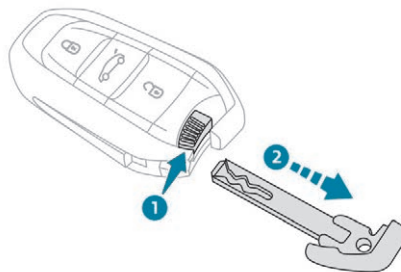
- unlocking/locking/deadlocking the vehicle.
- unlocking – opening/closing the boot.
- turning the lighting on.
- folding/unfolding the door mirrors.
- activating/deactivating the alarm.
- opening the windows.
- closing the windows and the sunroof.
- locating the vehicle.
- immobilising the vehicle.



The key, integral with the remote control, can be used for the following functions, depending on version:

- unlocking/locking/deadlocking the vehicle.
- activation/deactivation of the mechanical child lock.
- activation/deactivation of the front passenger airbag.
- back-up door locking.

Ejecting the key



☞ Pull on this button to remove the key from the housing.

To return it to the housing, first pull on this button.

Unlocking the vehicle



Complete unlocking

☞ Press the button.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door and fuel flap



It is set via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

- ☞ Press the unlocking button.
- ☞ Press it again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

On the first press of the unlocking button, flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- complete or selective unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

The door mirrors unfold.

Opening the windows



Depending on version, holding the unlocking button pressed for more than 3 seconds opens the windows.

The windows stop when you release the button.

Locking the vehicle



Normal locking

☞ Press the button.

On the first press of the locking button, illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds indicates:

- the locking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- the activation of the alarm for other versions.

The door mirrors fold.

i An improperly closed door or tailgate prevents locking of the vehicle. However, if your vehicle has an alarm, this will be fully activated after about 45 seconds. If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and there is then no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the alarm was previously activated, it will be reactivated automatically.

i The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors with the remote control can be set in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Deadlocking

☞ Within five seconds, press the locking button again to lock the vehicle.

For versions without an alarm, deadlocking is confirmed by illumination of the direction indicators for few seconds on the second press of the locking button.

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the interior central locking button on the dashboard. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Closing the windows and sunroof



Maintaining pressure on the locking button for more than three seconds allows the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof to be closed to the desired position.

This operation also closes the sunroof blind.

! Ensure that no person or object could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof. If, on versions with alarm, you want to leave the windows and/or sunroof partly open, you must first deactivate the interior volumetric alarm protection. For more information on the **Alarm**, refer to the corresponding section.

i **"Peugeot Adaptive LED technology"** On versions equipped with 3D LED rear lamps, the lamps illuminate in a scrolling pattern upon locking and unlocking the vehicle, as well as when the lamps are lit remotely.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



☞ Press this button.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and door mirror spot lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

Welcome lighting

Availability of this function depends on version.



- Briefly press this button. The sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps, number plate lamps and door mirror spotlamps come on for 30 seconds.

Pressing again before the end of the timed period switches off the lamps immediately.

Selective unlocking and opening of the tailgate



- The settings for the selective tailgate unlocking and motorised operation are made in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

By default, selective tailgate unlocking is activated and the motorised function is deactivated.



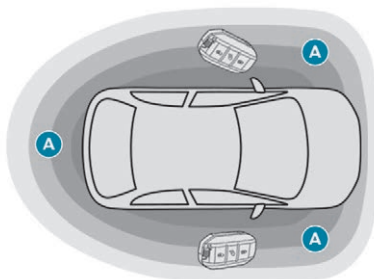
- Make a long press on this button to unlock the boot and trigger the motorised opening of the tailgate.

The doors and fuel filler flap remain locked.

- If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the unlocking button unlocks the whole vehicle.

- If motorised operation of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the unlocking button releases the tailgate. To lock the vehicle, it is necessary to close the tailgate again.

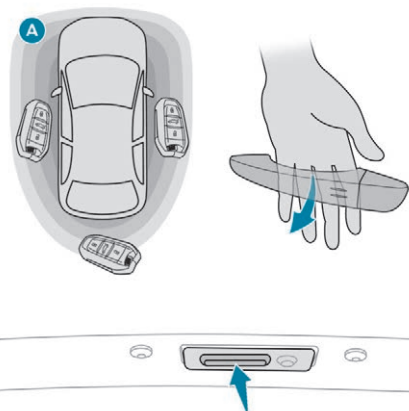
Keyless Entry and Starting



This system unlocks, locks and starts the vehicle, while keeping the electronic key in recognition zone **A**.

- The electronic key can also be used as a remote control. For more information on the operation of the **Remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Unlocking the vehicle



Complete unlocking

- With the electronic key in recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the door handle of one of the four doors or press the tailgate opening control.

If motorised operation of the tailgate is activated, this action triggers its automatic opening.

Opening the windows



Depending on version, keeping your hand behind the door handle or maintaining the press on the tailgate control for more than three seconds allows you to open the windows.

The windows stop when the hand is withdrawn or the control released.

Flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- the unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- the deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

The door mirrors unfold.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door and fuel flap

- ☞ Pass your hand behind the driver's door handle.
- ☞ To unlock the vehicle completely, pass your hand behind the handle of one of the passenger doors with the electronic key close to the passenger door, or press the tailgate opening control with the electronic key close to the rear of the vehicle.



The setting for selective unlocking of the driver's door is done in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

When unlocking the driver's door, flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- selective unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

The door mirrors unfold.

Selective unlocking of the tailgate

- ☞ Press the tailgate opening control to unlock just the boot.

The doors remain locked.



If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing this control also unlocks the doors.



Activation or deactivation of selective unlocking of the tailgate is done in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.



If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place.

However, the alarm (if fitted) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds.



If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and no action is taken at the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds.

If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm will also be reactivated automatically.



The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors with the remote control can be set in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.



As a safety measure (with children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system with you, even for a short period.

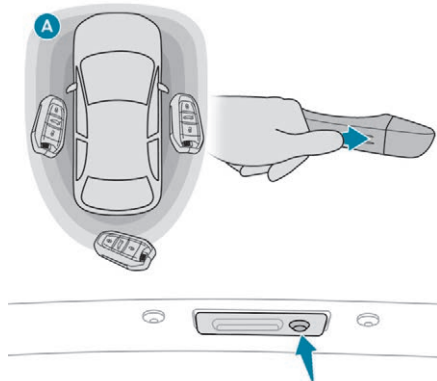
Be aware of the risk of theft when the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

! In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are put into long-term standby after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.

For more information on starting with **Keyless Entry and Starting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



☞ With the electronic key in recognition zone **A**, press on the handle of one of the four doors (at the markings) or on the locking control located on the tailgate.

It is not possible to lock the vehicle if one of the electronic keys is left inside the vehicle.

Closing the windows and sunroof



Maintaining pressure on the door handle or the tailgate control for more than three seconds allows the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof to be closed to the desired position.

This operation also closes the sunroof blind.

! Ensure that nothing could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- the locking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- the activation of the alarm for other versions.

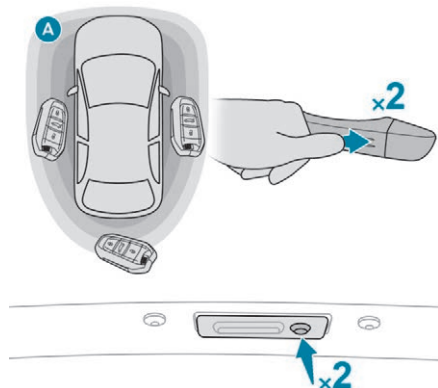
The door mirrors fold.

! For safety and theft protection reasons, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it with you.

! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection. If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the interior central locking button on the dashboard. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



- ☞ With the electronic key in recognition zone **A**, press on the handle of one of the four doors (at the markings) or on the locking control located on the tailgate.
- ☞ Within five seconds, press one of these locking controls again to deadlock the vehicle.

At the first press on one of the locking controls, illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- the locking of the vehicle for versions without alarm,
- the activation of the alarm for other versions.

The door mirrors fold.

At the second press, illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals the deadlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm.

i "Peugeot Adaptive LED technology"

On versions equipped with 3D LED rear lamps, the lamps illuminate in a scrolling pattern upon locking and unlocking the vehicle, as well as when the lamps are lit remotely.

Advice

! Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. It might stop working. It will then be necessary to reinitialise it again.

Electrical interference

The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, etc.

! Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

! Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked could make it difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), take the electronic key with you when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

! Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.

The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.

i Purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

Back-up procedures

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

These procedures should be used in the following cases:

- remote control cell battery discharged,
- remote control fault,
- vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

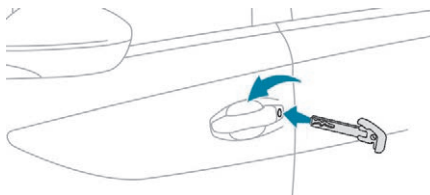
In the first case, you can also replace the remote control cell battery.

Refer to the corresponding section.

In the second case, you can also reinitialise the remote control.

Refer to the corresponding section.

Unlocking



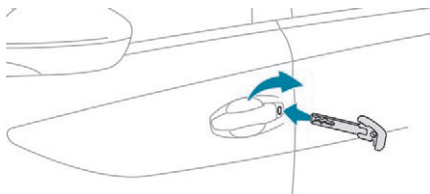
- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock.
- ☞ Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle.

For versions without alarm, the unlocking is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

The door mirrors unfold.

- i** If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds on opening the door; switch on the ignition to stop it.

Normal locking



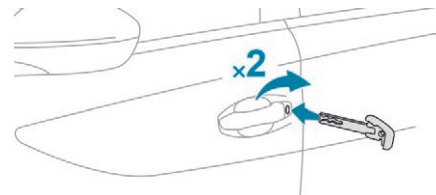
- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock.
- ☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle.

For versions without alarm, the locking is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

The door mirrors fold.

- i** If your vehicle is fitted with an alarm, this function will not be activated when locking with the key.

Deadlocking



- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock.
- ☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it.
- ☞ Within five seconds, turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle again to deadlock it.

For versions without alarm, at the second manoeuvre, the deadlocking is confirmed by lighting of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

The door mirrors fold.

Without central locking

These procedures should be used in the following cases:

- central locking fault,
- battery disconnected or discharged.

Driver's door

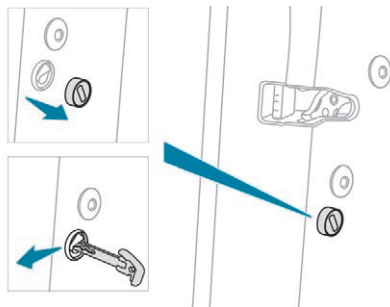
- ☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it, or towards the front to unlock it.

Passenger doors

Unlocking a door

- ☞ Pull the interior opening control for the door.

Locking



- ☞ Open the doors.

- ☞ For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

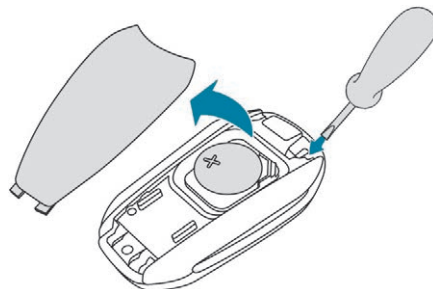
Refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ **Remove the black cap**, located on the edge of the door, using the key.
- ☞ Insert the key into the hole without forcing it; then, without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the black cap.
- ☞ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Changing the battery

A message is displayed in the instrument panel when the battery needs changing.

Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.



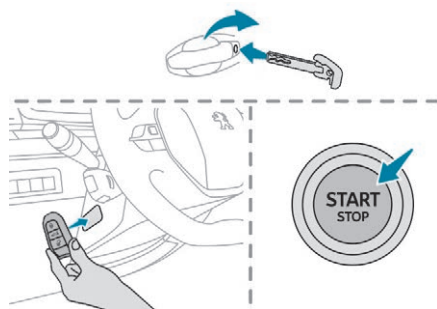
- ☞ Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and raise the cover.

- ☞ Remove the flat battery from its housing.
- ☞ Insert the new battery with the correct polarity and clip the cover onto the housing.
- ☞ Reinitialise the remote control.

For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a remote control fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.



- ☞ Place the mechanical key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to unlock your vehicle.
- ☞ Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.

- ☞ **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ☞ **With an automatic gearbox**, from mode **P**, fully depress the brake pedal.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition by pressing the "START/STOP" button.

The electronic key is now fully operational again.

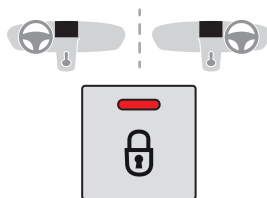
If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Central locking

This function allows the doors and boot to be locked or unlocked simultaneously from inside the vehicle.

Manual mode

Locking



- ☞ Press the button to lock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

i If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.



This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this symbol in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

Unlocking

- ☞ Press the button again to unlock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp in the button goes off.

i **When locking/deadlocking from the outside**

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and the button is inactive.

- ☞ After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control, Keyless Entry and Starting or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic mode

This is the automatic central locking of the vehicle when driving, also called anti-intrusion security.

For more information on **Anti-intrusion security**, refer to the corresponding section.

Anti-intrusion security

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and boot as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

Operation

If one of the doors or the boot is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.



This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

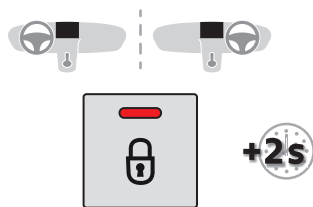
i Carrying long or voluminous objects

If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear.

Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.

Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

Activation/Deactivation



You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.

- ☞ With the ignition on, press the central locking button until an audible signal is triggered and a corresponding message of confirmation is displayed.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

! Driving with the doors locked may render access by the emergency services to the interior difficult in an emergency.

Alarm

(Depending on version)

This system protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

Exterior perimeter monitoring

The system checks for opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet, etc.

Interior volumetric monitoring

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment. The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Anti-tilt monitoring

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted or moved.

i When the vehicle is parked, the alarm will not be triggered if the vehicle is knocked.

Self-protection function

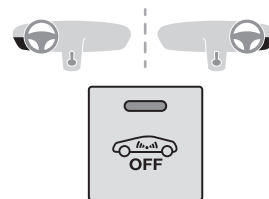
The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring are put out of service or damaged.

! For all work on the alarm system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation



- ☞ Switch off the engine and exit the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is active: the red indicator lamp in the button flashes every second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

i Following an instruction to lock the vehicle, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

i If an opening (door, boot or bonnet) is not closed properly, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation

☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.

or

☞ Unlock the vehicle with the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

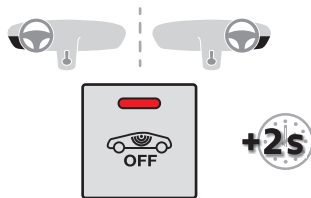
i When the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is also reactivated automatically.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window or sunroof partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by ship.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring



- ☞ Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds, press this button until the red indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated. The red indicator lamp in the button flashes every second.

i To be taken into account, the system must be deactivated every time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

☞ Deactivate the perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

☞ Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.

Depending on the country of sale, certain monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times consecutively.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, rapid flashing of the red indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, the flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a malfunction of the system. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic activation

(Depending on the country of sale)

The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.

- ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Doors

Your vehicle has doors with frameless windows. A window micro-descent system is activated when the door is opened and closed, as soon as an action is performed on the outer or inner door handle.

Opening

From outside



- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

The window automatically comes down by a few millimetres, allowing you to open the door.

i If you leave the door open for more than one minute, the window goes back up; pull the handle again to reactivate the system. In freezing temperatures, the presence of ice may interfere with the window micro-descent system; remove any ice that may have formed along the seal at the base of the window, then gently open the door.

i When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

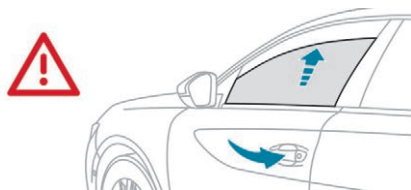
From inside



- ☞ Pull the interior opening control of a door; this unlocks the vehicle completely. The window automatically comes down by a few millimetres, allowing you to open the door.

- i** With the selective unlocking activated:
 - opening the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked),
 - opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

Closing



The window automatically goes back up after a few seconds and adjusts to seal the window perfectly.

- !** Beware of the risk of trapping your fingers when the window comes up automatically.

When a door is not closed correctly:



- **with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h))**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds.
- **with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h))**, in addition to the warning lamp and alert message, an audible signal sounds for a few seconds.

! When washing your vehicle:

- lock the vehicle using the remote control or remove the electronic key from the recognition zone, with the doors closed.
- avoid spraying the upper part of the windows.
- keep the end of the high pressure lance at least 1 metre away from the door windows and seals.

! In case of battery failure

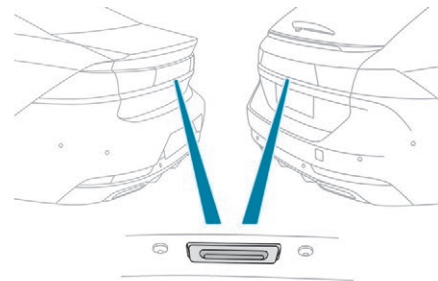
The micro-descent system may not operate:

- ☞ Open the driver's door gently.
- ☞ Recharge or replace the battery.
- ☞ Switch the ignition back on.
- ☞ Slightly lower all the windows starting from the driver's side electric window.
- ☞ Reinitialise the windows.

Boot

Opening the tailgate

With the exterior tailgate control



- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked or with the electronic key of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system in the recognition zone, press the central tailgate control.

- ☞ Raise the tailgate.

i When selective unlocking is activated, the electronic key must be close to the rear of the vehicle.

! The tailgate is not designed to hold a bicycle carrier.

Closing the tailgate

- ☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grips.
- ☞ Release the grips and press down on the outside of the tailgate to close it.

If the tailgate is not properly closed:



- **with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h))**, this warning lamp comes on and an alert message is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds.
- **with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h))**, this warning lamp comes on and an alert message is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.

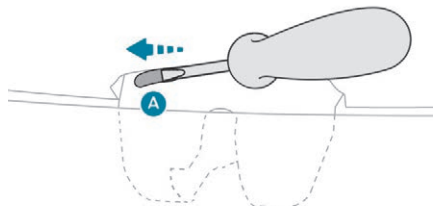
! In the event of a fault or difficulties felt in manoeuvring the tailgate when opening or closing it, have it quickly checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to stop this issue getting worse and so as to not cause the tailgate to drop, and serious injuries.

Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

Unlocking

- ☞ Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole A of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

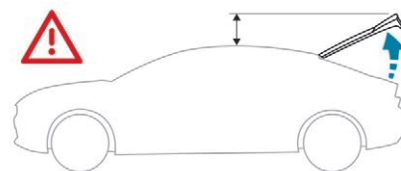
Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

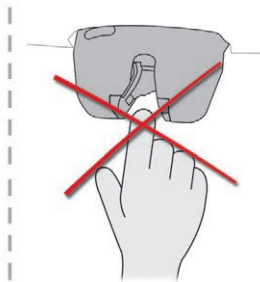
i In the event of a fault with the central locking system, it is essential to disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure complete locking of the vehicle.

Hands-free tailgate

The motorised tailgate must only be operated with the vehicle stationary.



! Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the motorised tailgate.



! Never introduce a finger in the locking system of the motorised tailgate – risk of a serious injury!

Safety anti-pinch

The motorised tailgate has an obstacle detection system that automatically interrupts and reverses its movement by a few degrees to allow the obstacle to be cleared.

Please note that this anti-pinch system is not active at the end of the closing travel (around 1 cm from completely closed).

! To avoid the risk of injury through pinching or trapping, before and during operation of the motorised tailgate:

- ensure that there is no-one close to the rear of the vehicle,
- watch the activity of your passengers, particularly any children.

Bicycle carrier/Towing device

The motorised tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.

When installing a bicycle carrier on towing device with connection of a cable to the towing socket, the motorised operation of the tailgate will be automatically deactivated.

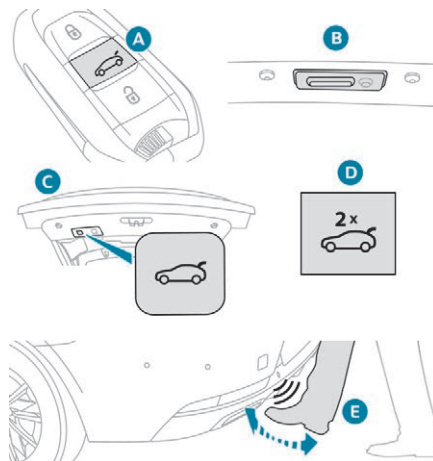
If using a towing device or bicycle carrier not recommended by PEUGEOT, it is essential to deactivate the motorised operation of the tailgate.

Motorised operation



Activation/deactivation of the motorised operation of the tailgate is done in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

This function is deactivated by default.



There are several ways of operating the tailgate:

- using the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system,
- using the exterior tailgate control,
- using the interior tailgate control,
- using the control on the dashboard,
- using the hands-free function below the rear bumper.

Opening/Closing

Press and hold the central button **A** of the electronic key.

or

- ☞ Press the exterior tailgate control **B** with the electronic key on your person.
- or
- ☞ Press the interior tailgate control **C** (closing only).
- or
- ☞ Press twice in succession on the control **D** on the dashboard.
- or
- ☞ With the electronic key on your person, use the hands-free function **E** by performing a "kicking" movement below the rear bumper close to the number plate.

The request is confirmed by the direction indicators lighting up, together with an audible signal.

Do not perform another kicking movement until you have received confirmation of acknowledgement.

- i** The tailgate opens, either completely by default, or to the position memorised beforehand. If motorised operation is not activated, these actions release the tailgate. The request to open the tailgate with one of the controls **A**, **B** or **E** enables you to unlock the vehicle or the tailgate alone beforehand, if selective unlocking of the boot is activated. Closing the tailgate with the hands-free function enables you to lock the vehicle.

- i** It is possible to interrupt the operation of the tailgate at any point. Pressing one of these controls again interrupts the movement that is underway. Following the interruption of a movement, pressing one of these controls again reverses the movement.

Hands-free function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access)



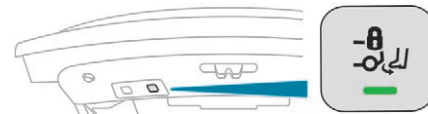
Activation/deactivation of the Hands-Free Tailgate/Opening function is done in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

This function is deactivated by default.

- !** Ensure that you are steady on your feet before performing the kicking movement. Take care not to touch the exhaust system which may be hot – risk of burns!

The "kicking" movement must be given in the walking direction, smoothly, not too fast, vertically from the bottom up. Raise the foot sufficiently – while avoiding touching the bumper – and withdraw it immediately.

Automatic locking by the hands-free function



To activate automatic locking of the vehicle when closing the tailgate using the hands-free function:



- ☞ press this button; its green indicator lamp will come on. Pressing this button again deactivates the function; its indicator lamp goes off.

Memorising an opening position

To **memorise** a position, in order to limit the motorised tailgate opening angle:

- ☞ move the tailgate to the desired position manually or by pressing the button,
- ☞ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds (the memorisation is confirmed by a brief audible signal).

To **delete** the memorised position:

- ☞ open the tailgate to any position,
- ☞ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds (the deletion is confirmed by a long audible signal).

Manual operation

The tailgate can be manoeuvred by hand, even with motorised operation activated.

The tailgate must be stationary.

When opening and closing a motorised tailgate manually, there is no assistance from gas struts. Resistance to opening and closing is therefore entirely normal.

I Repeatedly opening and closing the motorised tailgate can cause overheating of its electric motor, after which opening and closing will not be possible.

Allow at least 10 minutes for the electric motor to cool down before operating the tailgate again.

If you are unable to wait, operate it manually.

Reinitialising the motorised tailgate

This operation is necessary where there is no movement – after detection of an obstacle, connecting or recharging the battery, etc.

- ☞ Open the tailgate manually, if necessary.
- ☞ Fully close the tailgate manually.

If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop.

Precautions in use

- !** To avoid unwanted opening of the tailgate when using the towing device:
- deactivate the hands-free function in advance in your vehicle's configuration menu,
 - or remove the electronic key from the recognition zone, with the tailgate closed.

For more information on the **Towing device with retractable towball**, refer to the corresponding section.

- I** **In wintry conditions**
- In the event of an accumulation of snow on the tailgate, clear the snow before requesting motorised opening of the tailgate.
- The formation of ice can block the tailgate and prevent its opening: wait until the ice melts with the heating of the passenger compartment.

- I** **When washing**
- When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, do not forget to lock your vehicle to avoid the risk of unexpected opening.

Recommendations related to the hands-free function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access)

If several kicking movements to operate the tailgate have no effect, wait a few seconds before trying again.

If it does not work, check that the electronic key is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic interference (smartphone, etc.).

The function may be deactivated or affected if there is rain or snow.

The function may not work correctly with a prosthetic leg.

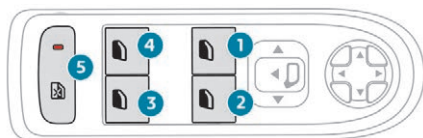
In some circumstances, the tailgate may open or close by itself, particularly if:

- you hitch or unhitch a trailer,
- you fit or remove a bicycle carrier,
- you load or unload bicycles to/from a bicycle carrier,
- you place or lift something behind the vehicle,
- an animal approaches the rear bumper,
- you are washing your vehicle,
- your vehicle is being serviced,
- you are accessing the spare wheel (depending on version).

To avoid such operating problems, keep the electronic key away from the recognition zone or deactivate the hands-free function.

! After installing a towing device, it is essential to contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop so that it is taken into account by the detection system. Otherwise, there is a risk of hands-free function failure.

Electric windows



1. Front left.
2. Front right.
3. Rear right.
4. Rear left.
5. Deactivation of the electric window switches located at the rear seats.
Locking the rear doors – Electric child lock (depending on version).

For more information about the **Electric child lock**, refer to the corresponding section.

Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch gently, without exceeding the point of resistance. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch fully, beyond the point of resistance: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

i The electric window switches remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition. Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

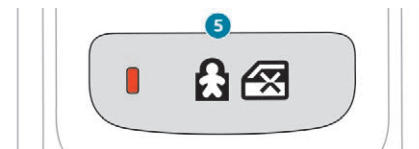
Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

To reset normal operation, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes fully. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one more second.

The safety anti-pinch function is not active during this operation.

Deactivation of the rear controls for the rear electric windows



For your children's safety, press control **5** to deactivate the controls for the rear electric windows, irrespective of their positions.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming activation of the system. It remains on for as long as the deactivation is maintained. Use of the rear electric windows from the driver's controls remains possible.

i In the event of a serious impact, the use of the rear electric window controls becomes possible again, if they were deactivated.

Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the safety anti-pinch function must be reinitialised. The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.

For each window:

- bring the window down completely, then bring it back up. It will go up by a few centimetres each time. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed,
- continue to pull the switch for at least one second after reaching the window closed position.

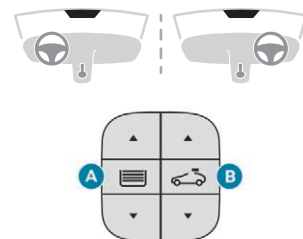
! In the event of contact (pinching) during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned. When operating the passenger electric window switches, the driver must ensure that nothing is preventing correct closing of the windows. The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly. Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows. Be aware of passengers or other persons present when closing the windows using the electronic key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

! Before any change of or operation on the battery, slightly lower the four windows.

Panoramic sunroof

The panoramic sunroof consists of a movable glass that slides over the roof and a blind that can be opened independently. Opening the roof automatically opens the blind.

☞ To operate the panoramic sunroof and its blind, use the buttons in the roof console.



A. Sunroof blind control

B. Panoramic sunroof control

The sunroof or blind can be operated when the ignition is turned on (if the battery is charged enough), with the engine running, in STOP mode of Stop & Start, and up to 45 seconds after turning off the ignition or after locking the vehicle.

! Before operating the sunroof or blind control buttons, ensure that no object or person might prevent the movement. Be particularly aware of children when operating the sunroof or blind. If something is trapped when closing the sunroof or blind, you should reverse the movement of the sunroof or blind. To do this, press the control button in question. The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof and blind correctly.

Anti-pinch system

If the sunroof or blind encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed.

The roof anti-pinch system is designed to be effective at speeds of up to 75 mph (120 km/h).

Precautions

! Do not put your head or arms through the open sunroof when driving – Risk of serious injury!

! Ensure that any luggage or accessories carried on the roof bars do not interfere with the movement of the sunroof. Do not place heavy loads on the movable glass of the sunroof.

! If the sunroof is wet, following a shower or washing the vehicle, wait until it is completely dry before opening. Do not operate the sunroof if it is covered by snow or ice – Risk of damage! Use only plastic scrapers to remove snow or ice from the sunroof.

! Check the condition of the sunroof seals regularly (presence of dust or deposits, dead leaves, etc.). If using a car wash, check that the sunroof is correctly closed in advance and keep the tip of the high-pressure lance at least 30 centimetres from the seals.

! Never leave the vehicle with the sunroof open.

Operation

When opening the sunroof fully, the movable glass moves to a partially open position, then slides over the roof. All intermediate positions are allowed.

i Depending on the speed of the vehicle, the partially open position may vary to improve the acoustics.

Opening and closing

- ☞ To **open** the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button at the **back**.
- ☞ To **close** the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button at the **front**.

Button operation

- ☞ Pressing a button beyond its point of resistance directly opens or closes the sunroof fully.
- ☞ Pressing the button again stops the movement.
- ☞ If you hold a button (without going beyond the point of resistance), the movement of the sunroof or blind stops when you release the button.
- ☞ Sunroof closed: pressing once without passing the point of resistance moves it to a partially open position.
- ☞ Sunroof partially open: pressing once without passing the point of resistance completely opens or closes it.

i You can close the sunroof and windows, then also the blind, by pressing and holding the door locking control. The movement stops when you release the locking control.

i Closure of the blind is limited by the position of the sunroof: the blind cannot go further than the front of the movable glass. During simultaneous movements of the sunroof and blind, the blind automatically stops or resumes movement depending on the position of the roof.

Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery or in the event of a fault or jerky movement of the sunroof or blind, the sunroof and blind must be reinitialised:

- ☞ Check that nothing is interfering with the sunroof or blind and that the seals are clean.
- ☞ Within 5 seconds after the completion of the sunroof movement followed by the blind movement resulting in their complete closing, press and hold the **front** part of sunroof button **B** again for at least 5 seconds.

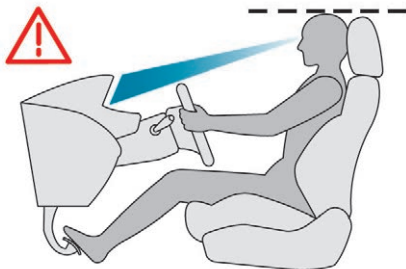
Driving position

Adopting a good driving position helps improve your comfort and protection. It also optimises interior and exterior visibility as well as access to controls.

Sitting comfortably

Whether or not your vehicle has certain seat adjustments described in this section depends on the trim level and country of sale.

Driver's side



Follow these recommendations as much as your height permits...

Sit fully back in the seat with your pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest. The seat cushion height should be set so your eyes are looking at the centre of the windscreen.

Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so you can fully press the pedals with legs slightly flexed.

Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of your head.

Adjust the length of the seat cushion to support your thighs.

Adjust the lumbar support so that it conforms to the shape of your spine.

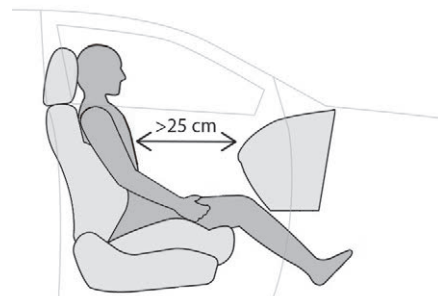
Adjust the steering wheel so that your arms are slightly bent.

The steering wheel should not hide the instrument panel.

! As a safety precaution, adjust the seats only when the vehicle is stationary.

i If your vehicle has electric seats, the ignition must be on to adjust them.

Passenger's side



Sit fully back in the seat with your pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest. Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so that you are at a distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) from the dashboard.

Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of your head.

Before moving off

Adjust the interior and exterior door mirrors to reduce blind spots.

Fasten your seat belt: place the diagonal belt in the middle of your shoulder and adjust the lap belt so that it is tightened across your pelvis. Ensure that all passengers have fastened their seat belts correctly.

- i** If your vehicle has electric door mirrors, the ignition must be on to adjust them.

When driving

Maintain a good driving position and hold the steering wheel with both hands at the "quarter to three" position, so that you can quickly reach the controls on and near the steering wheel.

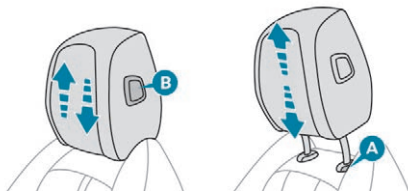
- !** Never adjust the seats or steering wheel when driving.
Always keep your feet on the floor.

Front seats

Front head restraints

Adjusting the height

- i** The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.



Upwards:

- ☞ pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.

Downwards:

- ☞ press and hold button **B** and push the head restraint down to the desired position.

Removing a head restraint

- ☞ Pull the head restraint up as far as it will go.
- ☞ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.
- ☞ Stow the head restraint securely.

Refitting a head restraint

- ☞ Introduce the head restraint rods into the guides in the seat backrest.
- ☞ Push the head restraint down as far as it will go.
- ☞ Press the lug **A** to free the head restraint and push it down.
- ☞ Adjust the height of the head restraint.

- !** Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and correctly adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Seats with manual adjustments

- !** For safety reasons, only adjust seats when the vehicle is stationary.

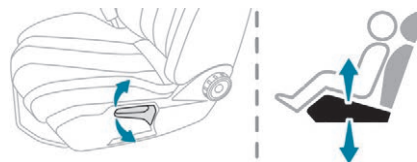
Longitudinal



- ☞ Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
- ☞ Release the bar to lock the seat in position on one of the runners.

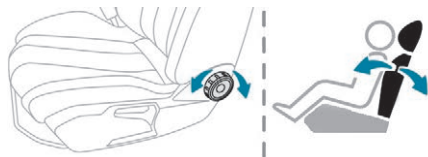
- !** Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Height



- ☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary to obtain the position required.

Backrest angle

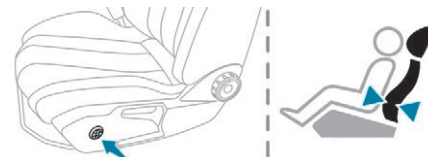


☞ Turn the knob forwards or rearwards.

Seats with electric lumbar adjustment

In addition to the previously mentioned manual adjustments, this seat features electric adjustment of the lumbar support.

Electric lumbar adjustment



The control allows independent adjustment of the depth and vertical position of the lumbar support.



- ☞ Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
- ☞ Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the lumbar support area.

"AGR" certified seats

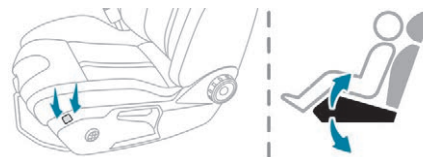
In addition to the previous manual adjustments and electric lumbar adjustment, this seat features manual adjustment of the seat cushion length and electric adjustment of the seat cushion angle.

Seat cushion length



- ☞ Pull the handle forwards to release the seat cushion, then move the front part of the seat cushion forwards or backwards.

Seat cushion angle



- ☞ Press and hold the front or rear of the button to raise or lower the front of the seat cushion.

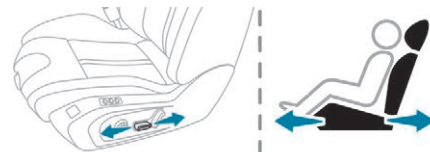
Electrically adjustable "AGR" certified seats

! For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

i To avoid discharging the battery, carry out these adjustments with the engine running.

This seat also features the previous manual cushion length adjustment and electrical lumbar adjustment.

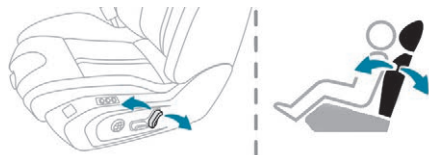
Longitudinal adjustment



- ☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

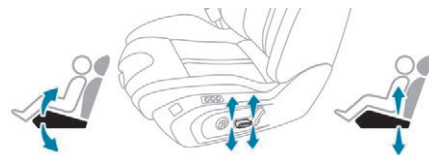
! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Backrest angle



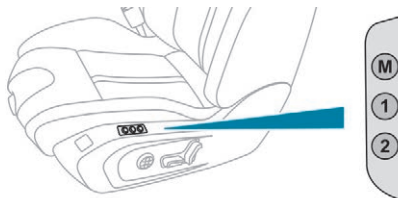
- ☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards.

Seat cushion height and angle



- ☞ Tilt the rear of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
- ☞ Tilt the front of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

It takes account of the electric adjustments of the seat, the door mirrors, and the air conditioning system.



Using buttons M/1/2

- ☞ Take your seat and switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within 4 seconds.

An audible signal confirms the memorisation. Memorising a new position cancels the previous position.

Comfort functions

Storing driving positions

Associated with the electrically-adjusted driver's seat, this function allows two driving positions to be memorised, to make these adjustments easier if there are frequent driver changes.

i

Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

- ☞ Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal confirms that adjustment is complete.

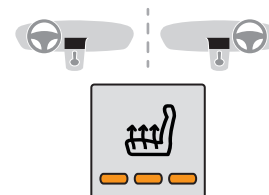
i

You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.

A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.

Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Heated seats



The function is active only with the engine running.

Switching on

- ☞ Press the button corresponding to your seat.
- ☞ Each press changes the level of heating; the corresponding number of indicator lamps come on orange (1 = low, 2 = medium, 3 = high).

Switching off

- ☞ Press the button again until all the indicator lamps are off.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.



Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, you can stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.



Prolonged use is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).

There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.

Do not use the system:

- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:

- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:

- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

Multipoint massage

System with a choice of type of massage and adjustment of its intensity.

This system operates with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of Stop & Start.

Activation/Settings

The massage settings are adjusted in the touch screen.

The system is switched on, either directly using the button on the front seat, or by activating a personalised ambience with the **i-Cockpit® Amplify** function.

From the front seat:



- ☞ Press this button; its green indicator lamp comes on.

The settings page is displayed on the touch screen with the last memorised settings. If the settings suit you and you make no changes, the display returns to its previous state, and the function activates immediately. Seats must be adjusted one after another, starting with the driver's seat.



The multipoint massages are also managed by the **i-Cockpit® Amplify** function.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit® Amplify** function, refer to the corresponding section.

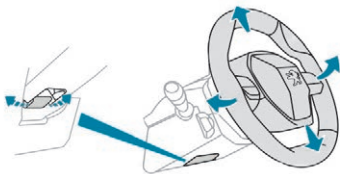
If you want to modify the settings:

- ☞ begin with the driver's seat.
- ☞ select a massage intensity from the three levels offered: "1" (Low), "2" (Normal) or "3" (High).
- ☞ select another type of massage from the ones offered.
- ☞ wait for the driver seat settings page to disappear.

- ☞ next, proceed with the passenger's seat in the same way.

The changes are taken into account immediately. Once activated, the system starts a one hour massage cycle, made up of sequences of 6 minutes of massage followed by 3 minutes at rest. The system stops automatically at the end of the cycle; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Steering wheel adjustment



- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ☞ Push the control lever to lock the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety measure, these adjustments should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass providing the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking.

They can also be folded for parking in narrow spaces.

On versions fitted with "electrochrome" mirrors, a system connected to a brightness sensor darkens the mirror to reduce the nuisance to the driver caused by low sun or headlamp beams from other vehicles.

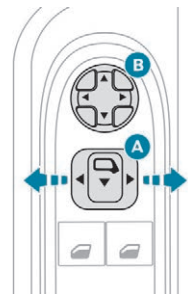
Demisting/Defrosting



If fitted to your vehicle, the demisting/defrosting of the door mirrors is done by pressing the rear screen defrosting control.

For more information on **Rear screen demist/defrost**, refer to the corresponding section.

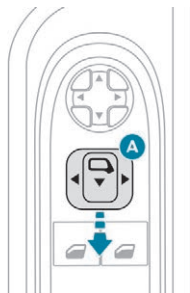
Adjustment



- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in any of the four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to its central position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots. The objects that you see in the mirrors are in fact closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding



- ☞ From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** from the central position rearwards.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- ☞ From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull control **A** from the central position rearwards.

i The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors with the remote control can be set in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

i If necessary, the mirrors can be folded manually.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which automatically tilts the mirrors downwards to assist with parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

With the engine running, on engaging reverse gear, the mirror glasses tilt downwards.

They return to their initial position:

- a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear,
- once the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- on switching off the engine.

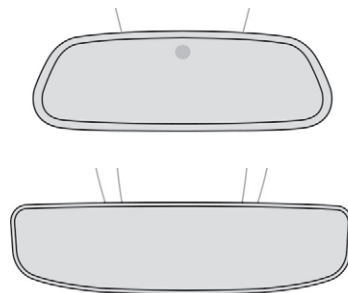


This function is activated/deactivated via the "**Vehicle settings**" tab in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps of other vehicles, etc.

Automatic "electrochrome" model

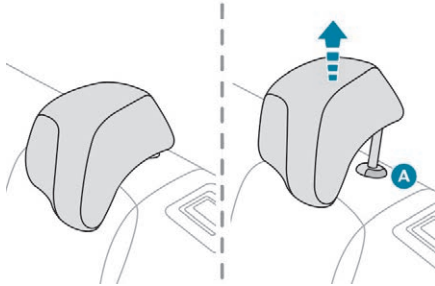


This system automatically and progressively changes between day and night use by means of a sensor measuring the light coming from the rear of the vehicle.

i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Rear seats

Rear head restraints



When a seat is not occupied, the head restraint must be in the low position to improve rear visibility:

- ☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it fully down.

When there is a passenger in the rear, the head restraint must be in the high position to improve comfort and safety:

- ☞ raise the head restraint up to the desired notch.

The rear head restraints can be removed.

To remove a head restraint:

- ☞ first tilt the corresponding backrest,
- ☞ pull the head restraint as far up as it will go,
- ☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely,
- ☞ stow the head restraint.

To refit a head restraint:

- ☞ insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest,
- ☞ push the head restraint down as far as it will go,
- ☞ press the lug **A** to free the head restraint and push it down.

! Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; they must be in place and in the high position.
The head restraint for the centre seat and those for the outer seats are not interchangeable.

Folding the backrests

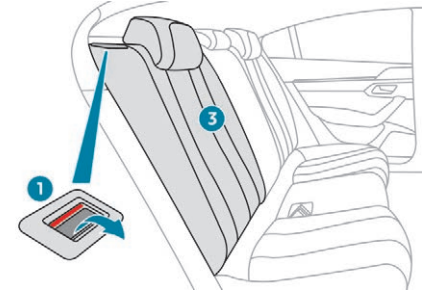
! Folding or unfolding the seat backrests must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

First steps:

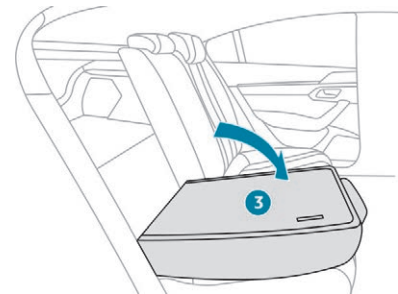
- ☞ lower the head restraints of the backrests, or even remove them when carrying heavy loads,
- ☞ if necessary, move the front seats forward,
- ☞ fold away the rear armrest,
- ☞ check that nothing and no one might interfere with the folding of the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.),
- ☞ check that the outer seat belts are lying flat correctly on the backrests.

i When the backrest is released, the red indicator in the release grip is visible.

From the passenger compartment

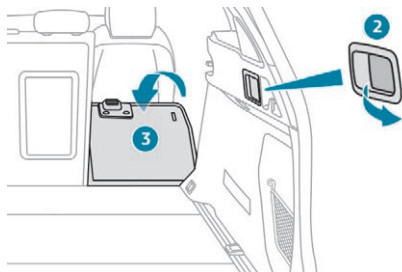


- ☞ Press the backrest release grip **1**.



- ☞ Guide backrest **3** down to the horizontal position.

From the boot (SW)

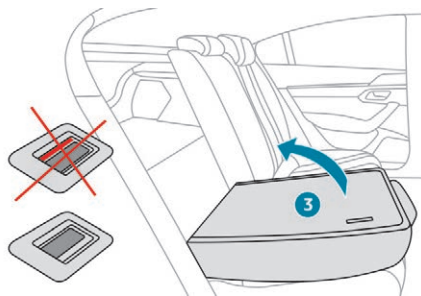


☞ Pull lever **2** towards you to unlock the backrest.

Backrest **3** folds fully onto the cushion.

Repositioning the backrests

! First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.



- ☞ Put the backrest **3** in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
- ☞ Check that the red indicator in the release grip **1** is no longer visible.
- ☞ Ensure that the backrest is securely locked by pulling it upwards.
- ☞ Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the manoeuvre.

! Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an impact.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forward – risk of severe injury!

i-Cockpit® Amplify function

This function allows the driving ambiances to be managed.

Specific system settings are offered for each ambience.

These ambiances can be customised in the touch screen.

Content of an ambience

An ambience is defined by the settings for each of the following systems:



- the passenger compartment ambient lighting, (activation/deactivation and brightness adjustment, choice of colour).



- the audio ambience, (choice of predetermined settings for the audio system equaliser).



- multipoint massage, (for each of the driver and passenger seats: activation/deactivation, choice of massage type and its intensity)



- driving modes, (ECO, Comfort, Normal or Sport).

Access to the i-Cockpit® Amplify function's home page



Direct access via this button



Access via the Applications menu



Select "i-Cockpit® Amplify".

Activating an ambience

From the home page:

☞ Select an ambience: "**Relax**" or "**Boost**".

Depending on the settings made for the ambience, the systems are activated immediately.

Deactivating an ambience

From the home page:

☞ Press "**Deactivate ambience**".

or

☞ Select another ambience.

The ambience is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Personalising an ambience

From the home page:

☞ Select an ambience to activate it.

- ☞ Press "**Settings**" to display the settings page for the ambience.
- ☞ Select a system for which you wish to modify the settings.
- ☞ After making the modifications, press any area of the screen outside the system settings window to return to the ambience settings page.
- ☞ After making all of the desired modifications to settings, press "**Save settings**". The modifications are taken into account immediately.

i It is possible to temporarily modify an ambience at any time, by modifying the settings for one or more of the systems managed in the ambience, without going via the i-Cockpit® Amplify function. For example, you can deactivate or modify the intensity of the current massage by pressing the massage activation button on your seat or activate/deactivate the ambient lighting in the passenger compartment from the **Driving/Vehicle** menu. In this case, the new settings will not be saved as part of the current ambience.

Heating and Ventilation

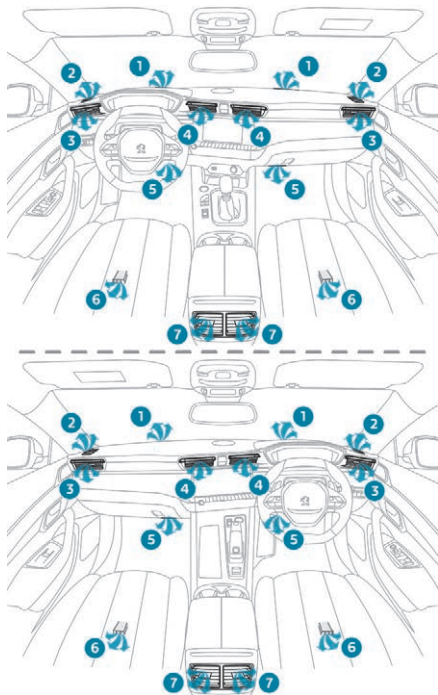
Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

Depending on your vehicle, the controls are accessible in the "**Air conditioning**" menu of the touch screen or are grouped together on the control panel of the centre console.

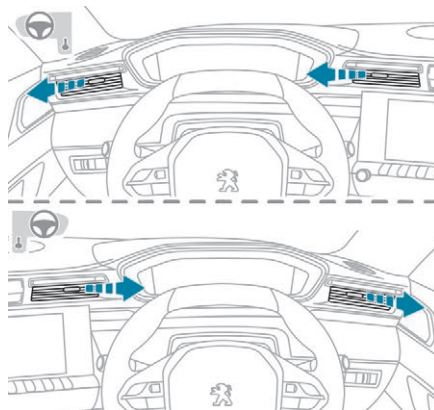
Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.

4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells.
7. Adjustable air vents.

Closing the vents



- ☞ For the side vents; place the slider in the central position, then move it sideways towards the door.
- ☞ For the central vents; place the slider in the central position, then move it sideways towards you.

Advice

i Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

- ☞ To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
- ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
- ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

 If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first air the passenger compartment for a few moments.

Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

 The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

 Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).

 To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the Warranty and Maintenance Record.

Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.

For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

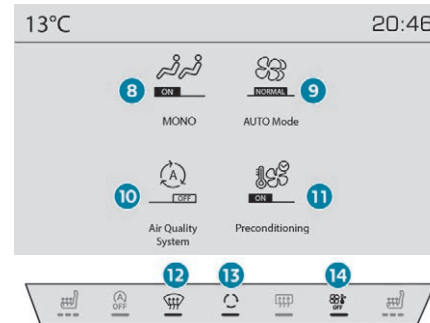
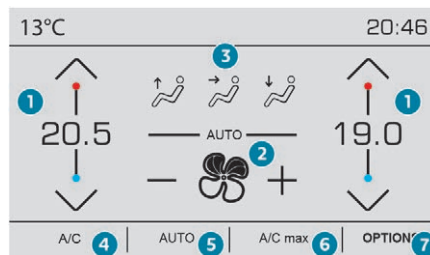
ECO driving mode

Selection of this mode optimises fuel consumption, but limits the performance of the heating and air conditioning, without however deactivating them.

Automatic dual-zone air conditioning



Press the **Air conditioning** menu button to display the system controls page.



1. Temperature adjustment.
2. Air flow adjustment.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Air conditioning on/off.
5. Automatic comfort programme on/off.
6. Maximum A/C.
7. Access to the secondary page.
8. Mono-zone/Dual-zone.
9. Selection of adjustment for the automatic comfort programme (Soft/Normal/Fast).
10. "AQS" (Air Quality System) function (depending on version).
11. Passenger compartment pre-conditioning (depending on version).
12. Automatic visibility programme.
13. Recirculation of interior air.
14. System off.

The air conditioning system operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls are available with the ignition on.

Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are automatic.

Temperature adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each choose their own temperature setting. The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

☞ Press one of the buttons **1** to increase or decrease the value.

It is recommended that you avoid a difference of more than 3°C in the settings for left and right.

Automatic comfort programme

When the indicator lamp in the button is on, the air conditioning system operates automatically: the system manages the temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment in an optimum way according to the comfort level you have selected.

It is possible to modulate the intensity of the automatic comfort programme by choosing one of the settings offered in the secondary page, accessible from the "**OPTIONS**" button.

To change the current setting, shown by illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp, press button **9** repeatedly until the desired setting is displayed:



"**Soft**": provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.



"**Normal**": offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).



"**Fast**": provides strong and effective air flow.

Use the "**Normal**" or "**Fast**" setting to assure the comfort of passengers in the rear seats. This setting is associated with automatic mode only. However, on deactivation of **AUTO** mode, the indicator for the last setting selected remains on. Changing the setting does not reactivate **AUTO** mode if this was deactivated.

i In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment. On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach the required level of comfort more quickly. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Automatic visibility programme

For more information on **Front demist – defrost**, refer to the corresponding section.

"Air Quality System" (AQS) function

Using a pollution sensor, this function automatically activates recirculation of the interior air once it detects a certain level of polluting substances in the exterior air. When the air quality returns to a satisfactory level, recirculation of interior air is automatically deactivated.

This function is not designed to detect unpleasant odours. Recirculation is automatically activated when the front screenwash is used or when reverse gear is engaged. The function does not operate if the exterior temperature is below 5°C, to avoid the risk of misting of the windscreen and side windows.

To activate or deactivate the function, go to the secondary page by using the "OPTIONS" button, then press button 10.

Manual control

You can manually adjust one or more of these functions, while retaining automatic control of the other functions by the system:

- air flow 2,
- air distribution 3.

As soon as you modify a setting, the indicator lamp in the "AUTO" button goes off.

☞ Press button 5 again to reactivate the automatic comfort programme.

Air flow adjustment

☞ Press one of the buttons 2 to increase or decrease the fan speed.

The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased.

By reducing the air flow to minimum, you are stopping ventilation. "OFF" is displayed alongside the fan.

! Avoid driving for too long without ventilation – risk of condensation and deterioration of air quality!

Air distribution adjustment

You can vary the air distribution in the passenger compartment using the three buttons 3.



Windscreen and side windows.



Central and side vents.



Footwells.

Each press on a button activates or deactivates the function. The indicator lamp is on when the button is activated. For a uniform distribution of air in the passenger compartment, the three buttons can be activated simultaneously.

In **AUTO** mode, the indicator lamps in all three buttons 3 are off.

Air conditioning

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

On/Off

☞ Press button 4 to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

Once activated, the indicator lamp in the button comes on.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment 2 is set to off.

! Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

Maximum air conditioning

This function allows faster cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.

The system automatically adjusts the temperature setting to the lowest possible, the air distribution towards the centre and outer vents, the air flow to maximum and activates recirculation of interior air.

☞ Press button 6 to activate/deactivate the function.

Once the function is activated, the indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Once the function is deactivated, the system returns to the previous settings.

Mono-zone/Dual-zone

The passenger temperature setting can be linked to the driver's setting (mono-zone function).

It is available in the secondary page by pressing the "**OPTIONS**" button.

☞ Press button **8** to activate the "**MONO**" function; its status is displayed as "**ON**".

The function is automatically deactivated if the passenger uses their temperature adjustment buttons (dual-zone function).

Ventilation with the ignition on

When the ignition is switched on, you can use the ventilation system to adjust the air flow **2** and air distribution **3** settings in the passenger compartment, for a period which depends on the battery charge.

This function does not allow the operation of the air conditioning system.

System switch-off

☞ Press button **14**.

Its indicator lamp comes on and all other indicator lamps for the system go off.

This action deactivates all functions of the air conditioning system.

By reducing the air flow **2** to a minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

Temperature is no longer regulated. A slight air flow can still be felt however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

! Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or the system deactivated – risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality! Pressing any button reactivates the system with the settings that were previously in use.

Recirculation of the interior air

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and the side windows. The recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

This function also allows the desired temperature in the passenger compartment to be reached in the shortest time.



☞ Press this button to activate/deactivate the function.

When the indicator lamp is on, the function is activated.

i Recirculation is automatically activated when the front screenwash is used or when reverse gear is engaged.

! Avoid prolonged use of the recirculation of interior air – risk of formation of mist and deterioration of the air quality!

Front demist – defrost

Automatic visibility programme

The automatic visibility programme allows to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.



☞ Press this button to activate/deactivate the function.

When the indicator lamp is on, the function is activated.

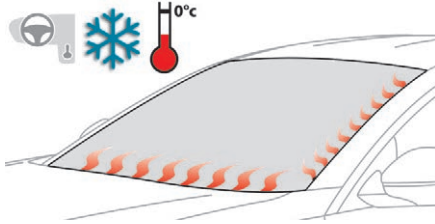
The system automatically manages the air conditioning (depending on version), air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

The system allows the manual modification of air flow without causing automatic deactivation of the automatic visibility programme.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting – defrosting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

! In wintry conditions, remove all snow or ice on the camera on the windscreen before moving off. Otherwise, this can affect the function of the equipment associated with the camera.

Heated windscreen



In cold weather, this system heats the bottom of the windscreen, as well as the areas alongside the windscreen pillars.

Without changing the settings for the air conditioning system, it allows faster release of the windscreen wiper blades when they are frozen to the windscreen and helps avoid the accumulation of snow resulting from the operation of the windscreen wipers.

Switching on/off

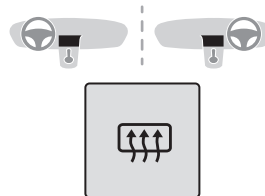


☞ With the engine running, press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

The function is active when the exterior temperature is below 0°C.

☞ Pressing the button again switches off the system; its indicator lamp goes off. The system is automatically deactivated every time the engine is switched off.

Rear screen demist – defrost



Switching on

☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors.

The orange indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

i Rear screen demisting – defrosting can only be operated when the engine is running.

Switching off

Demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

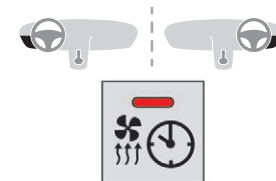
☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again.

The indicator lamp associated with the button goes off.



Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

Additional Heating/Ventilation



Heating

This is an additional and separate system which heats the passenger compartment and improves defrosting performance.



This indicator lamp is illuminated when the system is programmed. This indicator lamp flashes while the heating is in operation or when you carry out a remote start via the remote control.

This indicator lamp goes off at the end of the heating cycle or when the heating is stopped using the remote control.

Ventilation

This system allows ventilation of the passenger compartment with exterior air to improve the temperature experienced on entering the vehicle in summer.

Programming

You can programme the heating or ventilation to come on using the second page of the "Air conditioning" menu on the touch screen.

With PEUGEOT Connect Radio



Press the "Air conditioning" menu.

Press the "OPTIONS" tab.



Then press "Temperature preconditioning".



Select the "Status" tab to activate/deactivate the system.



- Press the "Other settings" tab to select the "Heating" mode to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "Ventilation" to ventilate the passenger compartment.
- After that, programme/preset the activation time for each selection.

Press this button to save.



With PEUGEOT Connect Nav

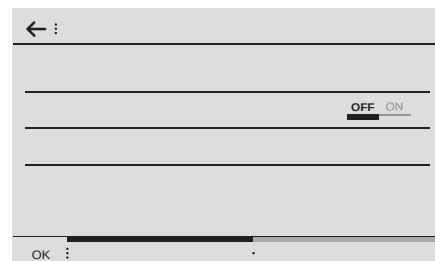


Press the "Air conditioning" menu.

Press the "OPTIONS" tab.



Press "Temperature programming".



Select the "Status" tab to activate/deactivate the system.



- Press the "**Parameters**" tab to select the "**Heating**" mode to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "**Ventilation**" to ventilate the passenger compartment.
- After that, programme/preset the activation time for each selection.
- Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Long range remote control

(Depending on version.)
This enables you to switch the heating in the passenger compartment on or off from a distance. The range of the remote control is about 0.6 miles (1 km) in open country.



Switching on



- Press and hold this button to start the heating immediately.

The indicator lamp in the remote control comes on in green for about 2 seconds to confirm that the signal has been received by the vehicle.

Switching off



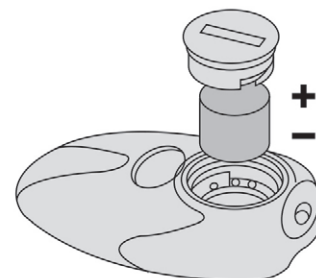
- Press and hold this button to stop the heating immediately.

The indicator lamp in the remote control comes on in red for about 2 seconds to confirm that the signal has been received by the vehicle.

- The indicator lamp in the remote control flashes for about 2 seconds if the vehicle has not received the signal. You should then move to a different location and repeat the command.

Changing the battery

If the indicator lamp in the remote control becomes orange, the state of charge of the battery is low.
If the indicator lamp is not on, the battery is discharged.



- Use a coin to unscrew the cap and replace the battery.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.



The maximum heating period is about 45 minutes depending on the climatic conditions.

- i** The additional heating system is powered by the fuel in the vehicle's fuel tank. Before use, ensure that there is enough fuel in the tank. If the tank level is on reserve, the system cannot be used. The ventilation is activated provided that the battery is sufficiently charged. The heating is activated provided that:
 - the battery is sufficiently charged,
 - the fuel level is adequate,
 - the engine has been started since the previous heating cycle.

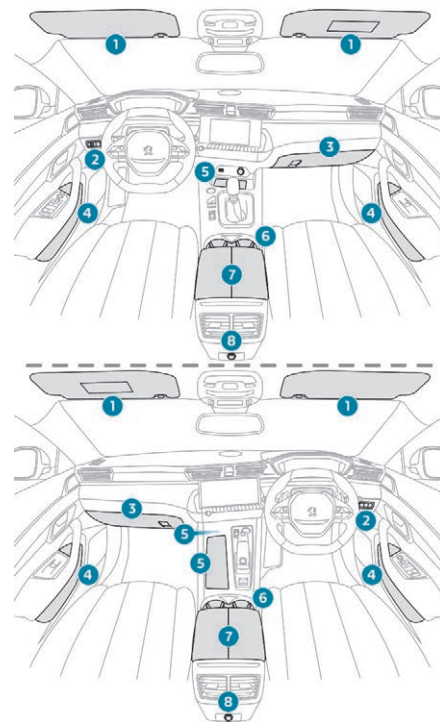


Always switch off the additional heating while refuelling – Risk of fire or explosion!

- !** To avoid the risks of poisoning or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system. Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.) – Risk of fire!

- !** Glazed surfaces such as the rear screen or windscreen can become very hot in places. Never put objects on these surfaces; never touch these surfaces – Risk of burns!

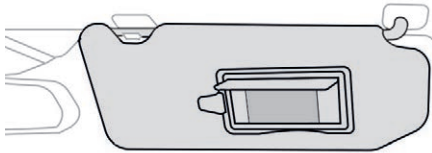
Front fittings



1. Sun visor
2. Ticket holder
3. Illuminated glove box
4. Door pockets

5. USB socket(s)/Front 12 V socket (120 W)
Storage compartment or Wireless
smartphone charger
6. Cup holders
7. Front armrest with storage compartment
8. USB socket(s) or Rear 12 V socket (120 W)

Sun visor

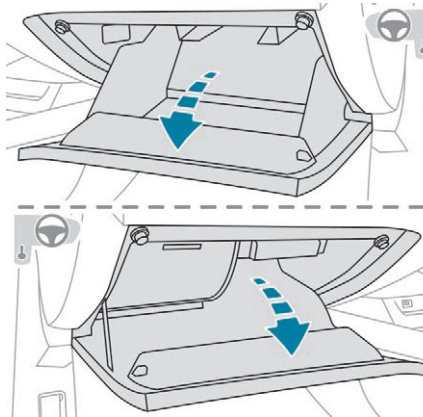


☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically. This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

Glove box

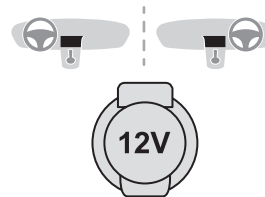
☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle. The glove box is lit when the lid is opened.

It contains an adjustable ventilation nozzle, distributing the same conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.



! Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front – it may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

Cigarette lighter/12 V accessory socket(s)

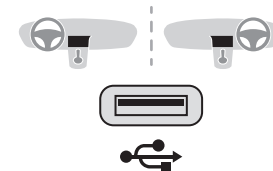


- ☞ To use the cigarette lighter, press it in and wait a few seconds until it pops out automatically.
- ☞ To use a 12 V accessory (max. power: 120 W), remove the cigarette lighter and connect a suitable adaptor.

You can use this socket to connect a telephone charger, a bottle warmer, etc. After use, put the cigarette lighter back into place straight away.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB socket(s)



Depending on the type of gearbox, the central console is fitted with one or two USB sockets. The USB socket allows the connection of a portable device, such as an iPod®-type digital audio player, or a USB memory stick.

The USB reader reads your audio files which are then transferred to the audio system and played via the vehicle's loudspeakers. These files are managed via the steering wheel controls or from the audio system.

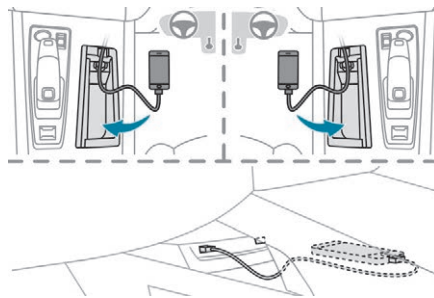
i When connected to the USB socket, the portable device can be charged automatically. While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the amperage supplied by the vehicle.



The USB socket, located on the left-hand side, also allows a smartphone to be connected by MirrorLink™, Android Auto® or CarPlay®, so that certain applications on the smartphone can be used on the touch screen.

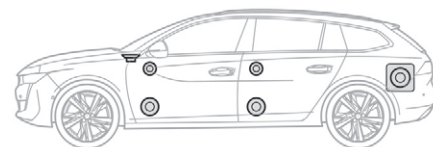
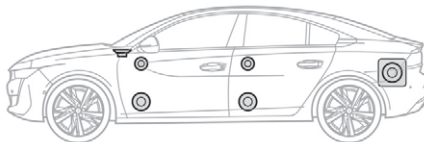
For more details on the Audio equipment and telematics, and the USB socket in particular, refer to the corresponding section.

Central console storage with automatic gearbox



- Press in the middle of the cover to access the storage.
- Put the device to be connected with its USB cable in the provided space.
- Run the cable through the hole in the wall.
- Connect the cable to the USB socket intended for the exchange of data with the audio system.

FOCAL® Premium Hi-Fi system



Your vehicle is equipped with a high-fidelity acoustic system designed by the French brand FOCAL®, a specialist in acoustics for more than 35 years and recognised throughout the world for its patented innovations and its unique audio signature.

10 speakers incorporating exclusive FOCAL® technologies offer the pleasure of pure and detailed sound inside the vehicle:

- Central speaker/satellite speakers: Polyglass technology delivering sound immersion and spatialisation.
- High fidelity woofer/mid-range speakers: Polyglass technology delivering balance and precise sound.
- TNF tweeters: Inverted dome aluminium technology giving optimum sound dispersion and very detailed higher frequencies.
- Sub-woofer: 200 mm triple coil Power Flower™ technology for defined and dynamic reproduction of lower frequencies.
- 12-way active amplification – 515 Watts: Hybrid Class AB/Class D technology providing breadth and finesse in the high frequency signals, as well as real power in the bass.

Wireless smartphone charger



It allows the wireless charging of a portable device, such as a smartphone, using the principle of magnetic induction, based on the Qi 1.1 standard.

The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell. The charging zone is identified by the Qi symbol.

Operation

The charger works with the engine running and in STOP mode of Stop & Start. Charging is managed by the smartphone.

For versions with Keyless Entry and Starting, operation of the charger may be interrupted when opening a door or switching off the ignition.

Charging

- ☞ First ensure that the charging zone is clear of other articles.
- ☞ Place a portable device in the middle of the charging zone.



- ☞ Once the portable device is detected, the charge indicator lamp comes on in green.
- ☞ Charging of the portable device's battery then starts.
- ☞ Once the portable device's battery is fully charged, the charge indicator lamp goes off.

! The system only supports charging one portable device at a time.



Do not leave any metal objects (coins, keys, vehicle remote control, etc.) in the charging area while a device is being charged – risk of overheating or interrupting the charging process!

Checking operation

The state of the charge indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

Charge indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible portable device detected. Charging finished.
Fixed, green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.
Flashing, orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
Fixed, orange	Fault with the portable device's battery meter. Temperature of the portable device's battery too high. Charger fault.



If the indicator lamp is lit orange:

- remove the portable device, then put it again in the middle of the charging zone.

or

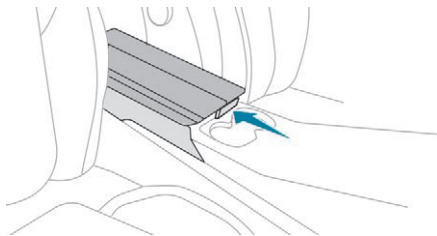
- remove the portable device and try again in a quarter of an hour.

If the problem persists, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front armrest

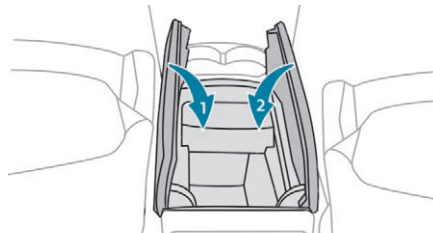
It includes a storage space.

Opening



- ☞ Press the lever beneath the cover. The cover opens in two parts.

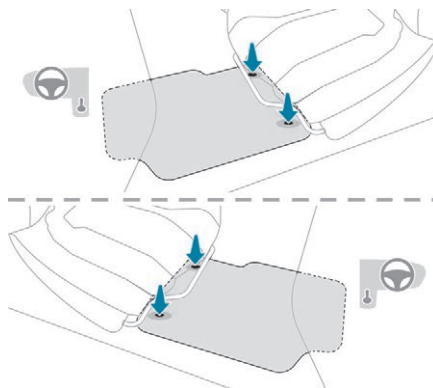
Closing



- ☞ Fold the two parts of the cover back.

Mats

Fitting



When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removing

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ reattach the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

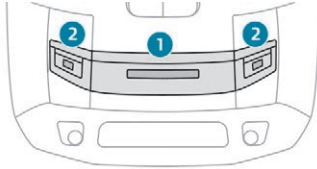
! To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

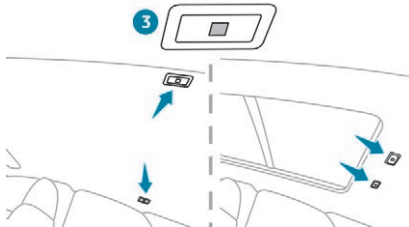
The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The mats approved by PEUGEOT have two fixings located below the seat.

Touch-sensitive courtesy lamps



1. Front touch-sensitive courtesy lamp
2. Front touch-sensitive reading lamps



3. Rear touch-sensitive reading lamps

Front touch-sensitive courtesy lamp

It comes on gradually:

- on unlocking the vehicle,
- on switching off the ignition,
- on opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

The front and rear touch-sensitive reading lamps also light up.

It switches off:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

The front and rear touch-sensitive reading lamps also go off.

A long press on the courtesy lamp switches it off completely. Once the finger is withdrawn from the courtesy lamp, deactivation is effected and the "OFF" symbol is displayed.

Touch-sensitive reading lamps

- ☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding reading lamp.

Interior ambient lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

At night, the interior ambient lighting comes on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.

Depending on version, the ambient lighting includes:

- two LEDs located in the front courtesy lamp.
- a light source in the storage compartment at the front of the centre console.
- illuminated guides on the front door panels and on the dashboard.

- illuminated guides on the sides of the centre console with an automatic gearbox.
- illuminated bezels for the front cup holders.

The ambient lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.



The interior ambient lighting can be activated or deactivated, its brightness adjusted and its colour selected, depending on version, in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

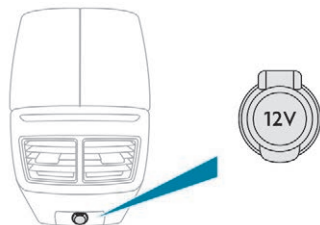


The interior ambient lighting is also managed by the **i-Cockpit® Amplify** function.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit® Amplify function**, refer to the corresponding section.

Rear fittings

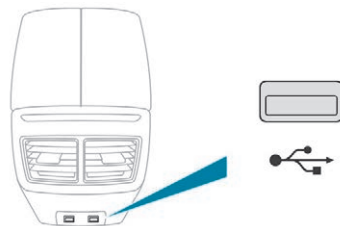
12 V accessory socket



- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max. power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adapter.

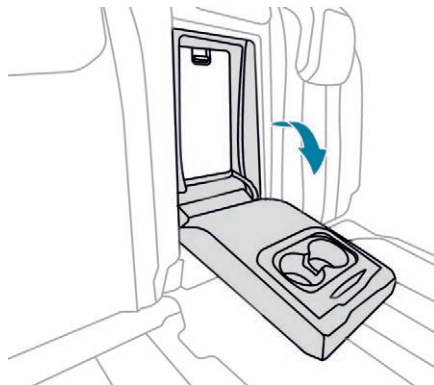
! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB sockets



Each USB socket is used only to power or recharge the connected portable device.

Rear armrest



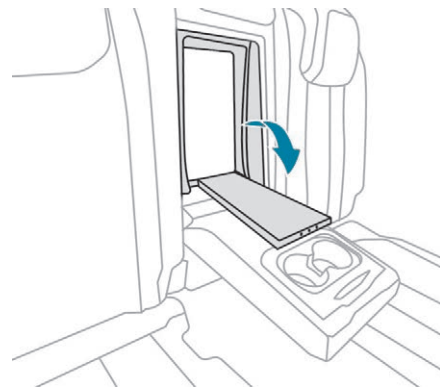
- ☞ Lower the rear armrest for a more comfortable position.
- The armrest incorporates two cup holders.

Ski flap

Mechanism for storing and transporting long objects.

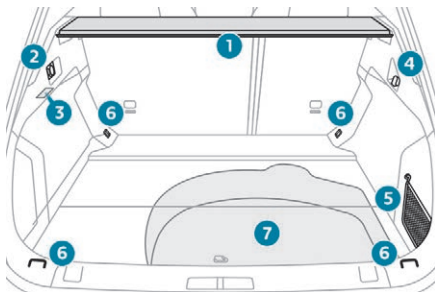
Opening

- ☞ Lower the rear armrest.
- ☞ Pull the flap handle downwards.



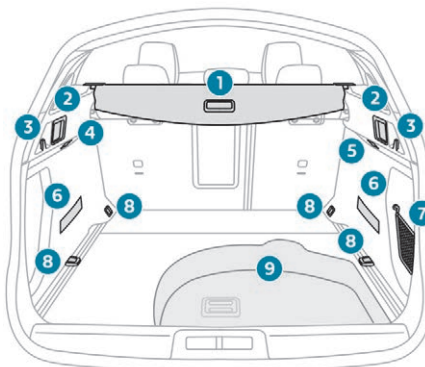
- ☞ Lower the flap.
- ☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.

Boot fittings



Hatchback

1. Load space cover
2. 12 V (120 W) socket
3. Boot lamp
4. Bag hook
5. Storage net or Hi-Fi amplifier
6. Stowing rings
7. Storage well/Tool box under the floor



SW

1. Load space cover
2. Rear seat folding controls
3. Bag hooks
4. 12 V (120 W) socket
5. Boot lamp
6. Retaining straps
7. Storage net or Hi-Fi amplifier
8. Stowing rings
9. Storage well/Tool box under the floor

i The stowing rings are designed to secure luggage using different types of retaining nets.

Such nets are available as an option or as an accessory.

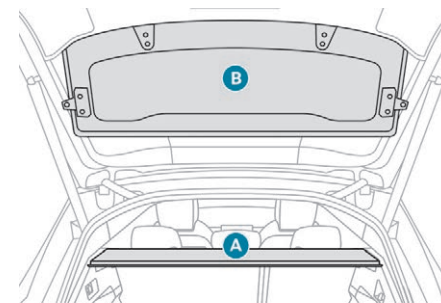
For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

For the installation of a high load retaining net, refer to the corresponding section.

3

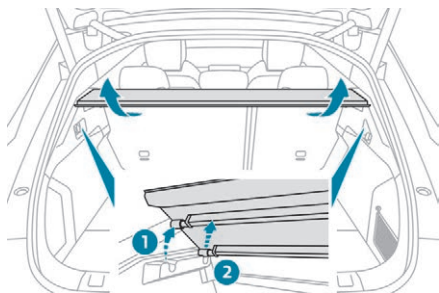
Load space cover

(Hatchback)



It consists of two parts:

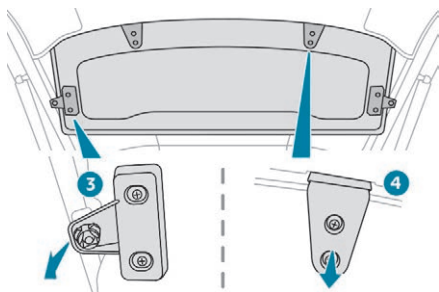
- a removable part **A**, fixed to the rear pillars of the passenger compartment,
- a removable part **B**, fixed to the frame of the rear screen.



To remove the part **A**:

- ☞ Note the mounting direction.
 - ☞ Unclip the rear mounting **1** on each side.
 - ☞ Unclip the front mounting **2** on each side.
- This tray can be raised only in one direction.

To refit it, proceed in the reverse order.



To remove the part **B**:

- ☞ Unclip the two side mountings **3**.
- ☞ Pull the load space cover forwards to extract the two rear mountings **4** from the frame.

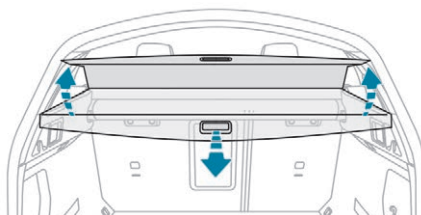
To refit it, proceed in the reverse order.

! When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

Load space cover

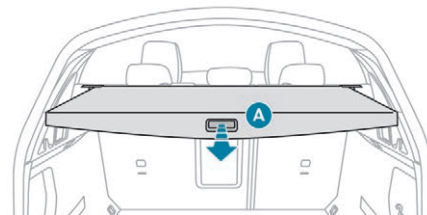
(SW)

Access



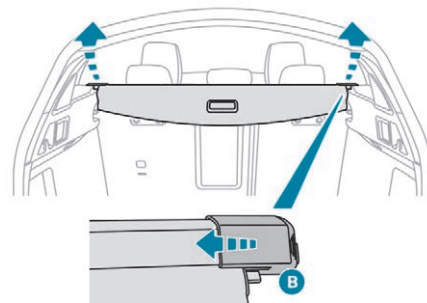
- ☞ Push the handle down, the load space cover automatically rises along the boot pillars.

To reel in



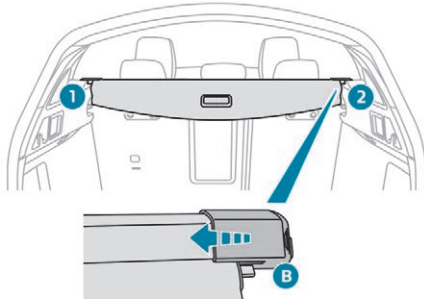
- ☞ Pull the handle towards you, the load space cover will automatically roll up. The moving part **A** can be folded against the backrests of the rear seats.

Removal



- ☞ Compress control **B** and lift the load space cover on the right then on the left to remove it.

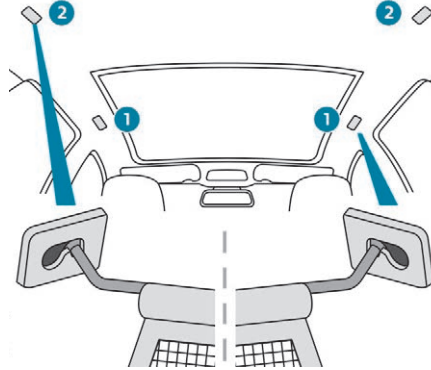
Installation



- ☞ Position the left-hand end of the load space cover roller in its location **1** behind the rear left seat.
- ☞ Compress the roller control **B** and put the roller in place in its location **2** on the right.
- ☞ Release the control to secure the load space cover.
- ☞ Unreel it to its fastening on the rear pillars.

! When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

High load retaining net (SW)

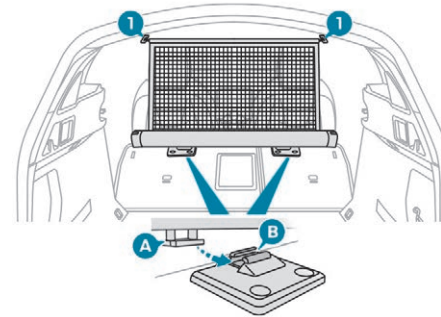


Hooked onto the special upper and lower fixings, this removable net allows the use of the entire loading volume up to the roof:

- behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded,
- behind the rear seats (row 2) when the load space cover is removed.

i It offers protection to the occupants when very sharp braking occurs.

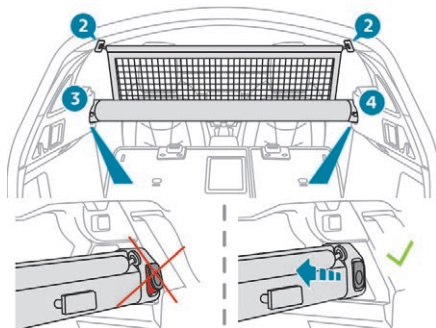
Row 1



- ☞ Fold down the rear seats.
- ☞ Remove the rear head restraints.
- ☞ Position the net's roller above the two rails (located on the back of the folded rear seats).
- ☞ Slide the two rails **B** in the grooves **A** and push the roller from left to right to secure it.
- ☞ Unroll the net without stretching it.
- ☞ Position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing **1**.
- ☞ Compress the net's metal bar, then pull it to position the other end in the other upper fixing **1**.
- ☞ Check that the net is attached securely and properly extended.

i Never reposition the rear seats while the net's roller is attached to the folded backrests.

Row 2



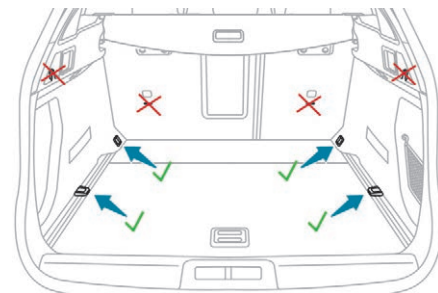
- ☞ Reel in then remove the load space cover.
- ☞ Fold down the rear seats.
- ☞ Position the left-hand end of the net's roller in the side support 3 by reaching from the left-hand side of the passenger compartment.
- ☞ Position the right-hand end of the net's roller in the side support 4 by reaching from the right-hand side of the passenger compartment.
- ☞ Press each side to lock in the roller; the red indicators must not be visible.
- ☞ Unroll the net from the boot.
- ☞ Position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing 2.
- ☞ Compress the net's metal bar, then pull it to position the other end in the other upper fixing 2.

- ☞ Check that the net is attached securely and properly extended.
- ☞ Straighten the rear seats and lock them in place.

12 V accessory socket

- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max. power: 120 W), remove the cap and connect an appropriate adaptor.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.

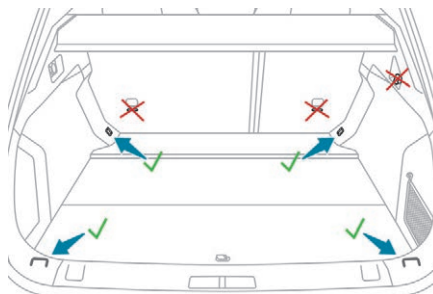
! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.



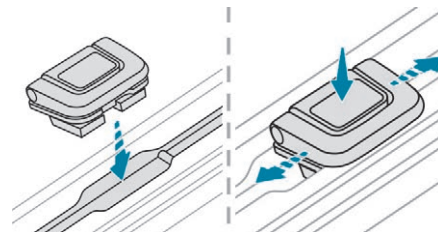
SW

The boot has four stowing rings to secure luggage using different types of retaining nets. For the SW, two of the rings are fixed and the other two are movable in tracks. For more information on the various nets, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

Stowing rings



Hatchback



To move one of the movable rings:

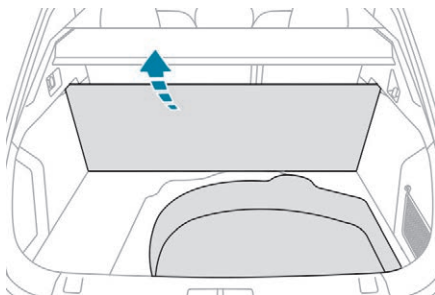
- ☞ While pressing the button, slide the ring into its track.
- ☞ Once in the desired position, release the button to lock it.

To remove or refit one of the movable rings:

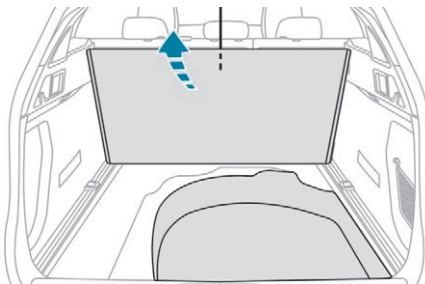
- ☞ Bring it to an oblong slot on the track.
- ☞ To observe the direction of installation, make sure the ring is positioned vertically and towards the outside of the vehicle.

i Do not confuse the stowing rings with the bag hooks or the Top Tether fixings.

Storage well



Hatchback



SW

- ☞ Raise the boot floor as much as possible to access the storage well.

Depending on version, it includes:

- a temporary puncture repair kit with the vehicle tools,
- a spare wheel with the vehicle tools.

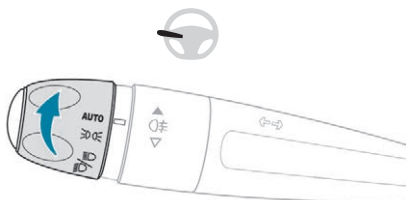
Boot lighting

This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

- i** The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
 - in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
 - with the engine running, unlimited.

Exterior lighting control stalk

Main lighting



Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps/ daytime running lamps.



Sidelamps only.



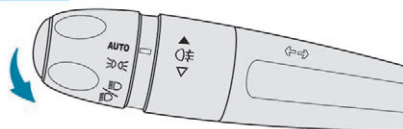
Dipped or main beam headlamps.

"Highway function"

On versions fitted with "Full LED" technology headlamps, the range of the dipped beam headlamps is automatically increased once the speed of the vehicle is above 68 mph (110 km/h).

"Peugeot Adaptive LED technology"
On versions with 3D LED rear lamps, brightness is adjusted automatically for optimum visibility at all times, both at day and night.

Headlamp dipping



Pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In "AUTO" and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by pulling and releasing the lighting control stalk.

Displays

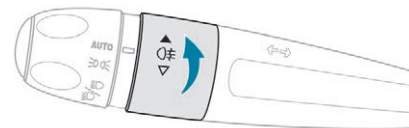
Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.



A fault with a lamp is signalled by the permanent illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Rear foglamps

! Rear foglamps must not be used in clear or rainy weather, at day or night. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They must be used only in fog or falling snow. In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.



The foglamps operate with dipped or main beam headlamps on.

To switch them on, turn the ring forwards. When the lighting is switched off automatically ("AUTO" position), the foglamps and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

To switch them off, turn the ring backwards.

Switching off of the lamps when the ignition is switched off

On switching off the ignition, all of the lamps turn off instantly, except when automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lighting after the ignition is switched off

To reactivate the lighting control, set the ring to "AUTO", then to the desired position.

On opening the driver's door, a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on.

It switches off automatically after a period of time that depends on the state of charge in battery (entering energy economy mode).

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

! Never look too closely at the luminous beam of "Full LED" headlamps: risk of serious eye injury.

Travelling abroad

If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Daytime running lamps/ Sidelamps

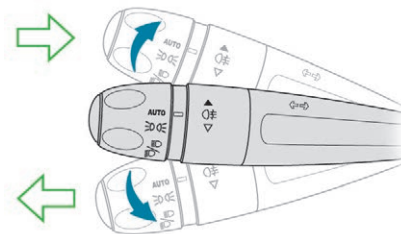
The front and rear lamps light up automatically when the engine starts.

They provide the following functions:

- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position "AUTO" with adequate light level).
- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk at "AUTO" position with low light levels or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

i The LEDs are brighter when operating as daytime running lamps.

Direction indicators



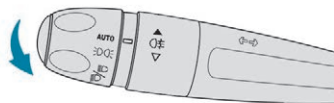
- ☞ Left: lower the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.

i If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 37 mph (60 km/h).

Three flashes

- ☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Parking lamps



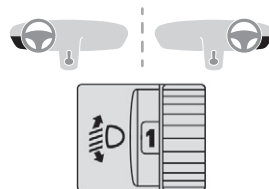
Vehicle side marking by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example, when parking on the right, push the lighting control stalk downwards; the left-hand sidelamps come on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator lamp in the instrument panel. To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Headlamp adjustment

Manual adjustment of halogen headlamps

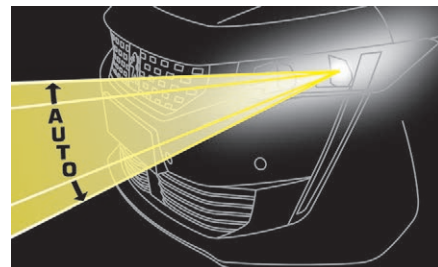


To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0** Driver only or driver + front passenger.
- 1** 5 people.
- 2** 5 people + loads in the boot.
- 3** Driver + loads in the boot.
- 4 5 6** Not used.

i The initial setting is position "0".

Automatic adjustment of "Full LED" technology headlamps



This system automatically adjusts the height of the beams from this type of headlamp, according to the load in the vehicle, to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users.

 If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

The system then places the headlamp beams in the lowest position.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not touch the "Full LED" technology headlamps. Risk of electrocution!

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When the ring is at the "AUTO" position and a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, side lamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Operating fault

 In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

 Do not cover the sunshine sensor, combined with the rain sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

 In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Guide-me-home lighting

Automatic

With the ring in the "AUTO" position, if the brightness is low, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.



The activation, deactivation and the duration of the guide-me-home lighting are set in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Manual



Switching on/off

 With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting control stalk to switch the function on/off.

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

Automatic exterior welcome lighting

With the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function activated, under low ambient light, the sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and door mirror spotlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.



Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Door mirror spotlamps



To make your approach to the vehicle easier, these illuminate:

- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the mirror and rearward of the front doors.

Switching on

The spotlamps come on automatically:

- when you unlock the vehicle,
- on opening a door,
- when a request to locate the vehicle is received from the remote control.

They also come on with the exterior welcome lighting and the guide-me-home lighting.

Switching off

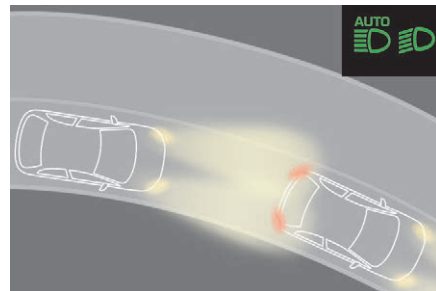
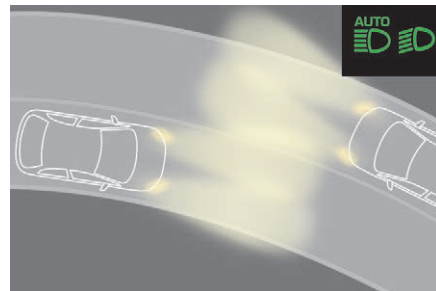
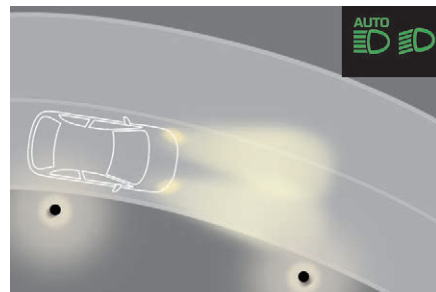
They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

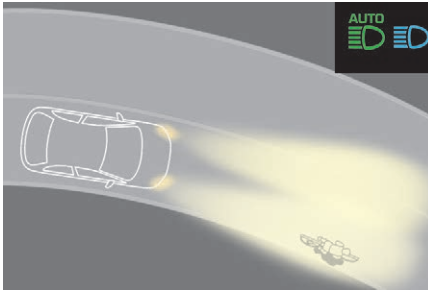
Automatic headlamp dipping

System which automatically changes between dipped and main beam according to the brightness and driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

! This system is a driving aid. The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility, traffic and observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system will be operational as soon as you have exceeded 16 mph (25 km/h). If the speed drops below 9 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.





Activation/Deactivation

- ☞ Turn the lighting control stalk ring to the "AUTO" position.



Activation and deactivation are done via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

Operation

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or if the traffic conditions do not allow illumination of the main beam headlamps:



- dipped beam is maintained, these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.



If the ambient light level is very low and the traffic conditions permit:



- main beam comes on automatically: these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

As soon as the vehicle leaves the area of thick fog, the function reactivates automatically.



This indicator lamp goes off while the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

- ☞ A "headlamp flash" pauses the function:
 - if the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam,
 - if the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the system, flash the headlamps again.

i The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:

- under poor visibility conditions (snow, heavy rain, etc.),
- if the windscreen is dirty, misted or obscured (by a sticker, etc.) in front of the camera,
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

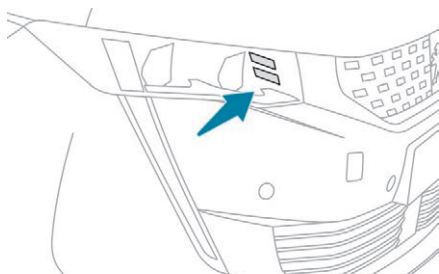
When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

The system is not able to detect:

- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example: vehicles running behind a safety barrier on a motorway),
- vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

! Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera.

Static cornering lighting



With the dipped or main beam headlamps on, this function allows headlamps to illuminate the inside of a bend using light-emitting diodes (LEDs).

The speed of the vehicle must be less than 56 mph (90 km/h).

This function is only available with the "Full LED" technology headlamps.

Activation/Deactivation



The function is activated and deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Switching on

This system operates from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 56 mph (90 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Night Vision

Using an infrared camera at the front of the vehicle, the system identifies and signals the presence of pedestrians and animals in the driver's field of vision, in low exterior light conditions.

For the permanent display of the image from the infrared camera in the instrument panel, select the "Night Vision" display mode by turning the knob located to the left of the steering wheel. Once the conditions are met, an alert is triggered when there is a risk of collision.

If the "Night Vision" display mode has not been selected, the alert is triggered in the form of a temporary window displayed in the instrument panel.

! Night Vision is a driving aid system that cannot, under any circumstances, replace the personal assessment of night-time visibility and traffic conditions. In some conditions, the contrasts in temperature are insufficient and the system may not detect all dangers or, conversely, it may give false warnings (e.g. engines of lorries parked on the edge of the road).

Conditions for operation

The function is available with the engine running and in STOP mode of Stop & Start. The light conditions must be very poor. The dipped beam headlamps must be switched on and maintained in good working order.

The temperature detection range is between -30°C and +30°C.

The speed of the vehicle must be less than 99 mph (160 km/h).

The camera detection range is between 15 m (for pedestrians) and 200 m, depending on visibility conditions.

Animals less than 0.50 m tall are not detected. The instrument panel must be in "Night Vision" display mode for the infrared camera image to be displayed constantly.

The constant display disappears upon switching off the ignition or if the conditions are not met.

Operation



Activation/deactivation of the function is done in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.



If all the operating conditions are met, this indicator lamp comes on in green: the display in the instrument panel (with "Night Vision" mode selected) and triggering of alerts are available.



If certain operating conditions (speed or temperature) are not met, the indicator lamp comes on in orange: only the display in the instrument panel is available (in "Night Vision" mode).

Whilst the exterior light is too bright or the dipped beam headlights have not been switched on, the alerts are not available.



The image provided by the camera is displayed in shades of grey in the instrument panel; warm objects appear brighter than cold objects. Once pedestrians or animals are detected, they appear in yellow frames.



Once the system detects a risk of collision with pedestrians or animals, it triggers an alert: one of these symbols is displayed in the instrument panel. The respective silhouette is framed in red.

If the "Night Vision" display mode has not been selected, the alert is triggered in the form of a temporary window.

In the event of an alert, the driver may act by making an avoiding manoeuvre or by braking.

Operating limits

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- poor visibility (falling snow, heavy rain, thick fog),
- camera masked by snow, mud or dust,
- camera scratched after going through roller car washes repeatedly,
- very high outside temperatures,
- at the top or bottom of a steep slope,
- on a very winding road,
- in a bend,
- after an impact which may have impaired the camera settings or damaged it,
- after repainting of the grille outside of the PEUGEOT network or a qualified workshop.

Recommendations on care

The infrared camera has a wash nozzle connected to the vehicle's front screenwash system.

This nozzle operates every 5th use of the screenwash.

Regularly check that the camera is clean.

In bad weather, or in wintry conditions, ensure that the camera is not covered with mud, ice or snow.

Malfunction



An orange warning lamp coming on whilst all the operating conditions have been met, accompanied by a message, indicates a system malfunction.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Wiper control stalk

Programming

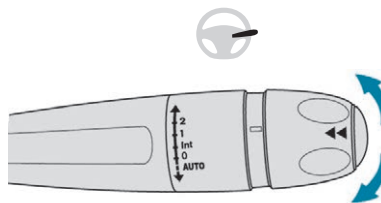
You can activate automatic wiping for the front wipers.

On the SW, you can also configure rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

i In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

! Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

Windscreen wipers



Wiping speed selection control: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2

Fast (heavy rain).

1

Normal (moderate rain).

Int

Intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

0

Off.

i After switching off the ignition, a slight movement of the windscreen wipers being stored under the bonnet may occur.

i Each time the ignition has been switched off for more than a minute, regardless of the previous wiper control stalk position, it is necessary to reactivate the wiping by operating the control.

AUTO

Automatic (proportional to the intensity of the rain).

Single wipe

 Pull the stalk briefly towards you.

Front screenwash

 Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.

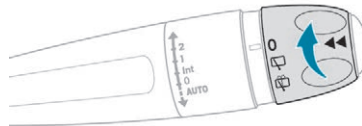
The screenwash and windscreen wiper operate for as long as the control stalk is pulled.

Termination of the screenwash is followed by a final wiping cycle.

- i** The screenwash jets are integrated in the tips of each arm. Additional jets are installed below the midpoint of each arm. The screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces the consumption of screenwash fluid. In some cases, depending on the contents or colour of the fluid and on the exterior brightness, the liquid spray may be hardly noticeable.

- !** To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty. Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. Always use a screenwash fluid suitable for low temperatures during the winter period. Never top up with water.

Rear wiper (SW)



To select the rear wiper: turn the ring to place the desired symbol against the marking.



Off.



Intermittent wipe.



Wash-wipe.

Rear screenwash

- ☞** Turn and hold the ring all the way towards the dashboard.

The screenwash and the wiper operate for as long as the ring remains turned.

Termination of the screenwash is followed by a final wiping cycle.

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the front windscreen wipers are operating.



The function is activated or deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

This function is activated by default.

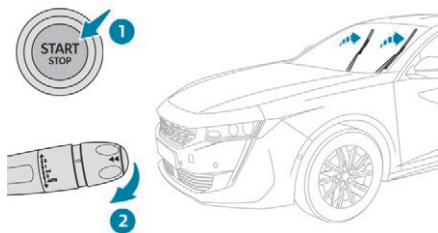
- !** In the event of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towing system, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the touch screen's **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This position is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

- i** To maintain the effectiveness of the wiper blades, it is advisable to:
 - handle them with care,
 - clean them regularly using soapy water,
 - avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
 - replace them at the first signs of wear.

Before removing a front wiper blade



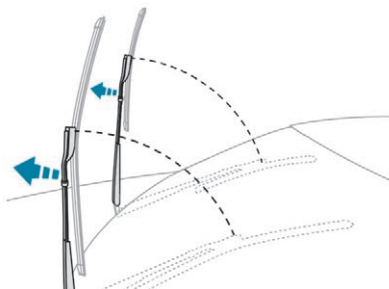
- ☞ In the minute following ignition switch-off, any operation of the wiper control stalk will position the wiper blades vertically.
- ☞ Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a front wiper blade

- ☞ To return the wiper blades to their initial position after the operation, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/refitting at the front



- ☞ Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
- ☞ Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

! Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.
Do not touch the wiper blade as you may cause irreparable damage.
Do not release them while moving them – risk of damaging the windscreen!

- ☞ Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

i Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

- ☞ Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
- ☞ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- ☞ Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
- ☞ Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then fold it carefully, guiding it to the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

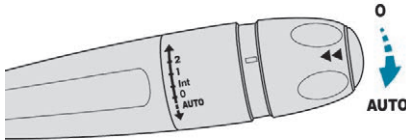
- ☞ Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
- ☞ Clean the rear window using screenwash fluid.
- ☞ Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
- ☞ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- ☞ Once again hold the arm by the rigid section then fold it carefully, guiding it to the rear screen.

Automatic windscreen wipers

In AUTO mode, the windscreen wipers operate automatically, adapting to the intensity of the rainfall without any action on the part of the driver.

Detection of rainfall is by means of a sensor at the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror.

Switching on



☞ Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.

A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.



This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Switching off

☞ Give the control stalk a further brief push downwards or place the control stalk in another position (**Int**, **1** or **2**).



This indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.



The automatic windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic rain sensitive wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen.

Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

General safety recommendations

! Labels are affixed in different locations on your vehicle. They include safety warnings and vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they are an integral part of your vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

! Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

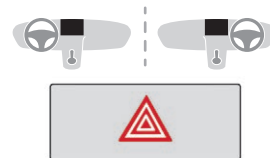
! We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by PEUGEOT may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for PEUGEOT dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by PEUGEOT or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer will result in the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

! Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specifications of compatible transmitters (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

Hazard warning lamps



☞ When you press this red button, all four direction indicators flash. They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the force of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate. It is also possible to switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn



☞ Press the central part of the multifunction steering wheel.

Emergency or assistance call



Peugeot Connect SOS



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. The flashing LED and the voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Peugeot Connect SOS" service*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request; the LED goes off. The LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

"Peugeot Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle and contacts you in your own language**, and – if necessary – requests that relevant emergency services be dispatched**. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly

to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically and independently of the deployment of any airbags.

- * In accordance with the general conditions of use for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.
- ** According to the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Operation of the system

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

If the indicator lamp lights up continuously red: there is a system fault.

If the indicator lamp flashes red: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, emergency and assistance calls may not function.

Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

- i The system's fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Peugeot Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

** According to the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Geolocation



You can deactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the "Peugeot Connect SOS" and "Peugeot Connect Assistance" buttons, followed by pressing "Peugeot Connect Assistance" to confirm.

To reactivate geolocation, simultaneously press the "Peugeot Connect SOS" and "Peugeot Connect Assistance" buttons again, followed by a press on "Peugeot Connect Assistance" to confirm.

- i If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

- i For technical reasons and, in particular, to improve the quality of PEUGEOT CONNECT services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

- i If you benefit from the Peugeot Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control comprising the following systems:

- Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) and Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).
- Trailer stability assist (TSA).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contribute towards improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.

The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.

The EBFD manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

This system optimises traction in order to avoid wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, this system monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

This system allows control of the vehicle to be retained when towing a trailer, so as to avoid the risk of snaking.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.



Illumination of this warning lamp, linked with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, signals that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.



When braking in an emergency, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.



When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.



After an impact, have these systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)/ Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Operation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started. They come into operation in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR system, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.

Reactivate the system when grip conditions allow.



Deactivation is done via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.



It is confirmed by the illumination of this warning lamp in the instrument panel and the display of a message.

Reactivation

The ASR system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched back on or from 31 mph (50 km/h).

Below 31 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate it manually:



Activation is done via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.



It is confirmed by this warning lamp in the instrument panel going out and the display of a message.

Malfunction



Illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, indicates a fault with the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

! ASR/DSC

These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by PEUGEOT dealers.

The use of snow tyres is recommended, in order to be able to benefit from the efficiency of these systems in winter conditions.

In this case, it is essential to equip the four wheels with tyres approved for your vehicle.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer swaying.

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

The electronic stability control (ESC) must not have any faults.

If the system detects oscillations (snaking) in the movement of the trailer at speeds between 37 and 99 mph (60 and 160 km/h), it acts on the brakes to stabilise the trailer and, if necessary, reduces the engine power to slow down the vehicle.



The correction is signalled by the flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel and illumination of the brake lamps.

For information on the weights and towed loads, refer to the "Technical data" section or the registration certificate for your vehicle. To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating fault



Should a fault occur with the system, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

If you continue to tow a trailer, reduce your speed and drive carefully!

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

! The trailer stability assist system offers increased safety in normal driving, provided that the recommendations on towing a trailer are observed. It should not encourage the driver to take risks, such as towing a trailer in adverse operating conditions (overloading, failure to observe the trailer nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system, etc.) or drive at too high a speed. In certain cases, snaking of the trailer may not be detected by the ESC system, particularly with a light trailer. When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden snaking of the trailer.

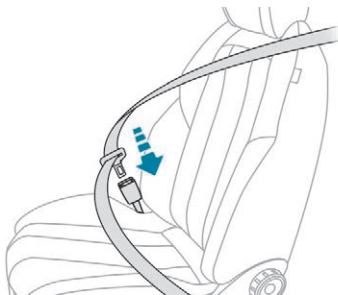
Seat belts

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system. This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants. The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

Fastening



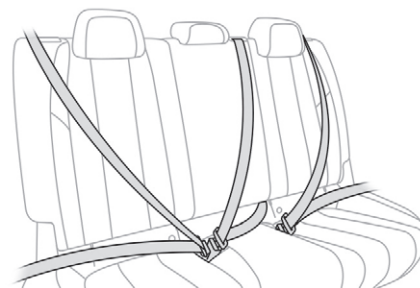
- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.

- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Rear seat belts



Each of the rear seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.

The outer seats are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.

When carrying heavy loads in the boot, the rear seat belts should be fastened.

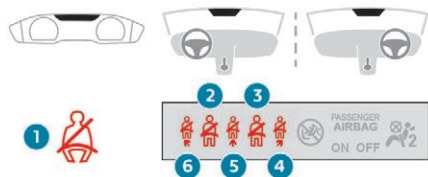
Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Seat belt not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp(s)



1. Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened/
unfastened warning lamp, in the instrument
panel.
2. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
3. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
4. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
6. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp(s) flashes for two minutes, accompanied by an audible signal. Once these two minutes have elapsed, the warning lamp(s) remains on until the driver or passenger(s) fastens their seat belt.

Front and rear seat belt warning lamp(s)

On switching on the ignition, warning lamp **1** comes on in the instrument panel and the corresponding warning lamp (**2** to **6**) comes on in red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamps display, if the corresponding seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

i If a rear seat belt is not fastened, the corresponding warning lamp (**4** to **6**) lights up for around 30 seconds.

Advice

! The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size.

The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

The inertia reels have an automatic locking device at the time of a collision, during sudden braking or if the vehicle turns over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

! Installation

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

! Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Maintenance

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.

**! In the event of an impact
Depending on the nature and
seriousness of the impact,**

the pyrotechnic pretensioner may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked and, if necessary, replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags

General information

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants of the front seats and the rear side seats in the event of serious collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters for the front seats and the rear side seats.

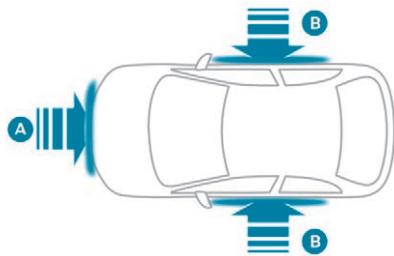
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

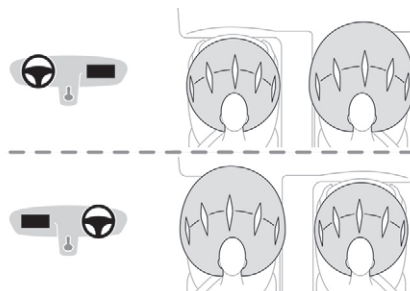
Impact detection zones



- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

i The deployment of one or more airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The detonation noise associated with the deployment of an airbag may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and chest.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

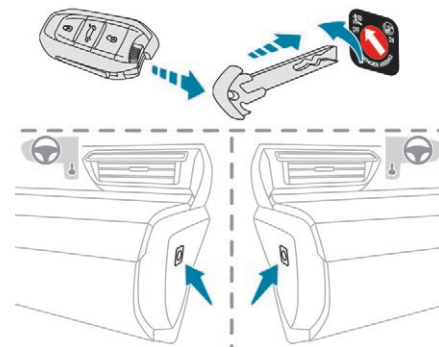
i These front airbags are adaptive. In particular, their hardness will decrease in the presence of an occupant of shorter height, with the seat adjusted to a forward longitudinal position.

Deployment

The airbags are deployed (except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated) in the event of a serious frontal impact to all or part of the frontal impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the chest and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag



- ☞ **With the ignition off**, open the passenger door and insert the key in the front passenger airbag deactivation switch on the side of the glovebox.
- ☞ Turn it to the **"OFF"** position.
- ☞ Remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning lamps display screen. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

! To assure the safety of your child, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

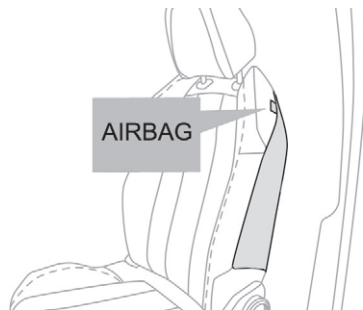
Reactivating the front passenger airbag

When you remove the child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the **ON** position to reactivate the front airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning lamps display screen for approximately one minute to signal that the front airbag is activated.

Lateral airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder. Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

They are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle. The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door trim panel.

Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head. Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

It is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the respective windows.

Malfunction



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed. In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Advice

! **For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.**

Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.

Fasten your seat belt, ensuring it is positioned correctly.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The airbag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

! Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

! Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted to your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

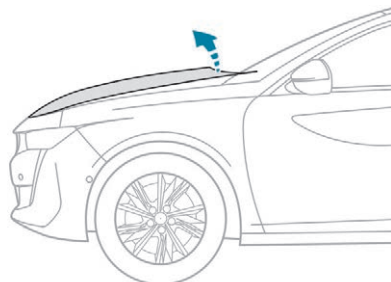
! Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the product range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer. Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.) as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary. The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors – risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

Such work must only be done by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Active bonnet

The active bonnet has been designed to optimise pedestrians' safety in the event of collision with the front of the vehicle.

- i** Deployment of the active bonnet is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. The airbag warning lamp comes on. Following deployment of the system, do not try to open or close the bonnet. Call a towing company or go to the nearest PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop, driving below 19 mph (30 km/h). Make sure that you adjust the height of the driver's seat – risk of hindrance to visibility!

- !** This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the active bonnet will not be deployed again.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the system checked. Do not tamper with the pyrotechnic systems under the bonnet, close to the struts – risk of explosion!

All work on this system must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Malfunction

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and the display of a message, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The active bonnet may no longer be deployed in the event of an impact.

General points relating to child seats

i The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

i It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- "rearward facing" up to the age of 3,
- "forward facing" over the age of 3.

! Ensure that the seat belt is positioned and tightened correctly.

For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

At the front: if necessary, adjust the passenger seat.

At the rear: if necessary, adjust the relevant front seat.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat.

Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Advice

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

! Children at the rear

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a "rearward facing" child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted "forward facing".

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, straighten its backrest. For optimal installation of the "forward facing" child seat, verify that its backrest is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat, if possible in contact with it.

! Children at the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving. Deactivate the front passenger airbag when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seats. Otherwise, there is a risk of serious or fatal injury to the child if the airbag is deployed.

! Installing a booster seat (height adjuster)

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs. We recommend using a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

! Additional protections

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock. Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child seat at the rear

"Rearward facing"



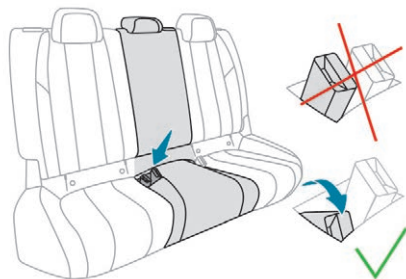
When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the "rearward facing" child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

"Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Centre rear seat



The right-hand lateral buckle must be stored in its housing when installing a child seat on the centre rear seat.

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.

Child seat at the front



When a child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust this seat to the **highest position**, in the **rearmost longitudinal position**, with the backrest straightened.

"Rearward facing"



! The front passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed** if the airbag is deployed.

"Forward facing"

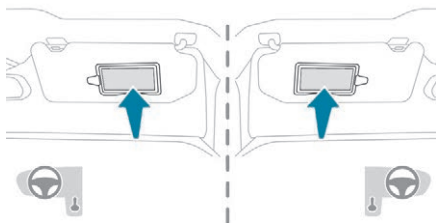


! You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

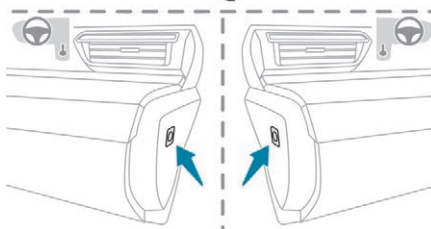
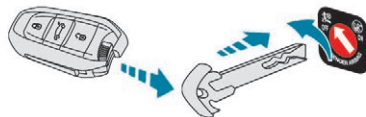
! Never install a "rearward facing" child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.





The warning label present on both sides of the passenger sun visor repeats this instruction. In line with current legislation, you will find this warning in all the required languages in the following tables.

Passenger airbag OFF



i For more information on **Airbags** and particularly on deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلال الطفل الوجه باتجاه الراء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه .
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYÖNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

LT	NEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdekļi priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghalix tista' tikkawza korrimment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNAJĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retenere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTELNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedišta koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

Recommended child seats

Range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Is installed in the "rearward facing" position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L5

"RÖMER KIDFIX XP"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Is only installed on the outer rear seats.

The head restraint on the vehicle seat must be removed.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L6

"GRACO Booster"

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Is only installed on the front passenger seat or on the outer rear seats.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

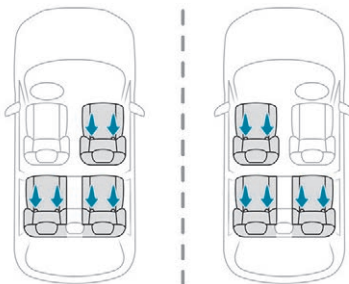
In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing universally approved child seats secured using the seat belt **(a)** according to the weight of the child and the seating position in the vehicle.

Seat position				Weight of the child/indicative age			
				Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year	From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years	From 15 to 25 kg (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years	From 22 to 36 kg (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years
Row 1 (c)	Passenger seat with height adjustment (d)		With front passenger airbag deactivated: "OFF"	U	U	U	U
			With front passenger airbag activated: "ON"	X	UF	UF	UF
Row 2	Outer rear seats (e)			U	U	U	U
	Centre rear seat (f) (g)			U	U	U	U

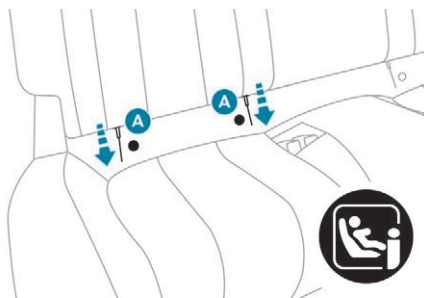
- U:** seat suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" use.
- UF:** seat suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "forward facing" use.
- X:** seat not suitable for installing a child seat of the weight group indicated.
- (a)** Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- (b)** Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
- (c)** Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child in this seat.
- (d)** Adjust the passenger seat to the maximum height position.
- (e)** When installing a child seat on a rear seat in a "rearward facing" or "forward facing" position, move the front seat forward then straighten the backrest to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.
- (f)** A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on this seat.
- (g)** Before installing the child seat on the centre seat, store the right-hand outer buckle in the space provided in the seat cushion.

"ISOFIX" mountings

The seats, shown below, are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:



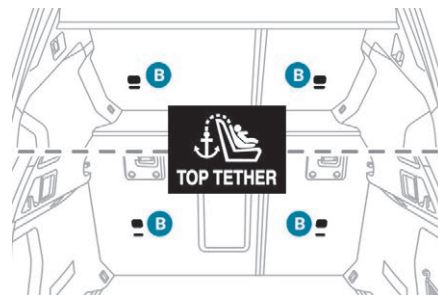
The mountings comprise three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle's seat backrest and cushion, indicated by a marking,



Front seat



Rear seats

- a ring **B**, located behind the seat and identified by a marking, referred to as the **TOP TETHER**, for fixing the upper strap.

This arrangement reduces forward tipping of the child seat in the event of a front impact. The ISOFIX mounting system ensures fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

ISOFIX child seats are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**. Some seats also have an **upper strap** which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- ☞ remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- ☞ pass the upper strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, centring it between the apertures for the head restraint rods,
- ☞ attach the hook of the upper strap to ring **B**,
- ☞ tighten the upper strap.

i When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident. Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided with the child seat.

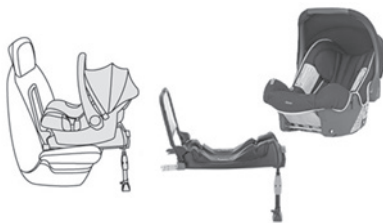
i For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

i Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base"
(size category: **E**)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**.
Is only installed on the front passenger seat or on the outer rear seats.

The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor.
This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the seat body is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX
(size category: **B1**)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg



Is installed only in the "forward facing" position.
Is attached to the rings **A** and the upper ring **B**, referred to as the **TOP TETHER**, using an upper strap.

Is only installed on the front passenger seat or on the outer rear seats. The vehicle's seat head restraint must be removed.

3 seat body angles: sitting, reclining and lying down.

This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat using the three-point seat belt. Adjust the position of the vehicle's front seat so that the child's feet are not touching the backrest.

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In line with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on the vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, as determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the i-Size logo.

			Weight of the child/indicative age									
			Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months		Under 10 kg Under 13 kg (group 0) (group 0+) Up to about 1 year			From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat			Carrycot		"Rearward facing"			"Rearward facing"		"Forward facing"		
ISOFIX size category			F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Seat position												
Row 1 (a)	Passenger seat with height adjustment	With front passenger airbag deactivated: "OFF"	X		IL			IL		IUF/IL		
		With front passenger airbag activated: "ON"	X		X			X		IUF/IL		
Row 2 (b)	Outer rear seats		IL		IL (c)			IL (c)		IUF/IL (c)		
	Centre rear seat		Not ISOFIX									

IUF: seat suitable for installing an Isofix Universal seat, "Forward facing", secured using the upper strap.

IL: seat suitable for installing an Isofix Semi-Universal seat which is either:

- "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For securing the upper strap using the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

X: seat not suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX seat or carrycot of the weight group indicated.

- (a)** Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child in this seating position.
- (b)** The installation of a carrycot on this seat may prevent the use of one or more of the other seats in this row.
- (c)** Remove the head restraints.

i-Size child seats

i-Size child seats have two latches that engage on the two rings **A**.

i-Size child seats also have:

- either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**,
- or a support leg which rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat,

the role of which is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.

For more information on **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the associated section.

Locations for i-Size child seats

In accordance with the new European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing i-Size child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings approved for i-Size.

Seat position			Front passenger airbag	i-Size restraint system
Row 1 (a)	Passenger seat (b)		Deactivated: "OFF"	i-U
			Activated: "ON"	i-UF
Row 2	Rear outer seats			i-U
	Rear centre seat			Not i-Size

i-U: suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, "forward facing" and "rearward facing".

i-UF: only suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, "forward facing".

(a) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child at this seating position.

(b) Tilt the seat backrest to 45°, then install the child seat. Straighten the backrest until it contacts the child seat's backrest.

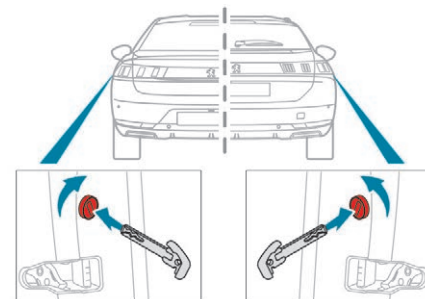
Manual child lock

Manual system to prevent opening of a rear door using its interior control.

The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door.

It is identified by a symbol marked on the bodywork.

Locking

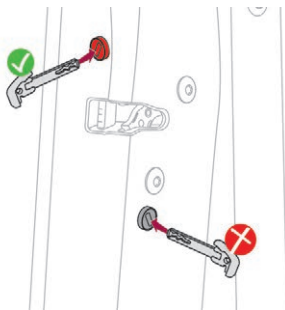


Using the integral key, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:

- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.

Unlocking

- ☞ Using the integral key, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:
- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
 - to the right on the right-hand rear door.



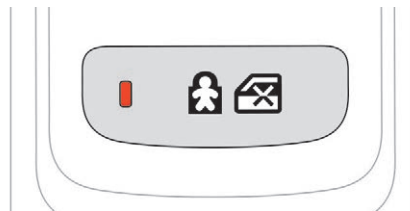
! Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

Electric child lock

(Depending on version)

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows.

Activation



- ☞ Press this button; the red indicator lamp in the button comes on.
This red indicator lamp remains on for as long as the child lock is activated.

i Opening the doors from the outside and operation of the electric rear windows from the driver's controls remain possible.

Deactivation

- ☞ Press this button again; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.
This indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is deactivated.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.
Always keep the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions. Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.

As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out any operations that require close attention when the vehicle is stationary.

On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.

In bad weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

! Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of poisoning and death!

In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical elements of your vehicle (engine and gearbox), the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before driving.

Important!

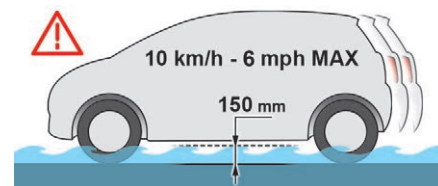
! Never drive with the parking brake applied – Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, never park or run the engine on inflammable surfaces (dry grass, fallen leaves, etc.) – Risk of fire!

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive on a flooded road:

- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
 - deactivate the Stop & Start function,
 - drive as slowly as possible without stalling.
- In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.

If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In case of towing

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towable load on an incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

! New vehicle

Do not pull a trailer before having driven at least approximately 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.



For more information on **Headlamp adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.



Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically disabled if an approved towbar is used.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

The keys contain an electronic chip which has a secret code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

A few seconds after switching off the ignition, this system locks the engine control system, therefore preventing the engine from being started in the event of a break-in.

If the system fails, as reported by a message, the engine will not start.

Contact the PEUGEOT dealer.

Starting/Switching off the engine

Starting the engine



☞ With a **manual gearbox**, put the gear lever into neutral.

- ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, fully depress the clutch pedal.
- or
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, select mode **P** or **N**.
- ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the brake pedal.

i The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key must be inside the vehicle. If the electronic key is not detected in this zone, a message is displayed. Move the electronic key into this zone so that the engine can be started. If there is still a problem, refer to the "Key not detected – Back-up starting" section.

- ☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts. On certain versions with the automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock.

For **Diesel engines**, in sub-zero temperatures and/or when the engine is cold, the start will only take place once the preheater warning lamp is off.



If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button:

- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, you should keep the clutch pedal fully depressed and not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, you should keep the brake pedal fully depressed and not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message is displayed in the instrument panel.

In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering column.



With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations for up to 2 minutes while stationary with the engine running (accelerated idle speed).



If the engine stalls, release the clutch pedal and push it all the way down again, the engine will restart automatically.



As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle while the engine is running.

Switching off the engine

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle, engine at idle.
- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, preferably put the gear lever into neutral.
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, preferably select mode **P** or **N**.
- ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The engine stops and the steering column locks.

In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel to lock the steering column. On certain versions with the automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock, but the gearbox locks in mode **P**.



If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

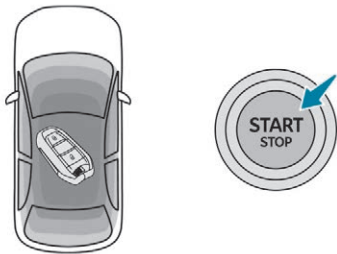


Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.



Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Switching the ignition on



With the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key inside the vehicle, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **with no action on the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.

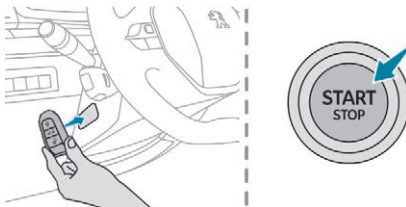
- ☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.
- ☞ Press this button **again** to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

i With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate state of charge in the battery.

Key not detected

Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column to allow the engine to be started if the system does not detect the key in the recognition zone, or when the battery in the electronic key is discharged.



- ☞ Place and hold the remote control against the reader.
- ☞ **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ☞ **With an automatic gearbox**, select mode **P**, then fully depress the brake pedal.
- ☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button. The engine starts.

Back-up switch-off



When the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.



- ☞ To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "**START/STOP**" button for about five seconds.

In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency switch-off

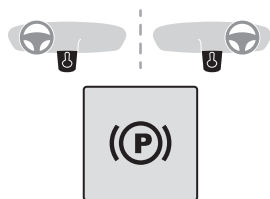
In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving). Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about five seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

On certain versions with the automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock.

Electric parking brake

The system provides, in automatic operation, for the application of the parking brake on switching off the engine and its release as the vehicle moves off.



The driver can take over at any time to apply or release the parking brake, by operating the control lever:

- ☞ by briefly **pulling** the control lever to apply the brake,
- ☞ by briefly **pushing** the control lever, while pressing the brake pedal, to release it.

Automatic mode is activated by default.

Indicator lamp



This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and in the control lever to confirm the application of the parking brake.

It goes off to confirm the release of the parking brake.

This indicator lamp flashes on the control lever when manual brake locking or release is performed.

! In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake no longer works. As a safety measure with a manual gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear. As a safety measure with an automatic gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the chocks supplied against one of the wheels. Call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



! Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking brake indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever must be on fixed. If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

! Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

! When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and engage a gear with a manual gearbox. When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and select mode **P** with an automatic gearbox. For towing, your vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

Manual operation

Manual release

With the ignition on or engine running:

- ☞ press the brake pedal,
- ☞ while maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control lever.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

i If you push the control lever without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:

- ☞ pull briefly on the control lever.

Confirmation of the instruction is signalled by flashing of the indicator lamp in the control lever.

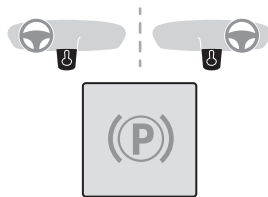
Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Automatic operation

Automatic release

Ensure first that the engine is running and the driver's door is properly closed.

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively when the vehicle moves off**.



With a manual gearbox

- ☞ Fully depress the clutch pedal, engage 1st gear or reverse.
- ☞ Press the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

With an automatic gearbox

- ☞ Press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Select mode **D**, **M** or **R**.
- ☞ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

i With an automatic gearbox, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are correctly closed.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

! When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, you risk releasing the parking brake.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off**.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

! Automatic application does not take place if the engine stalls or goes into STOP mode of Stop & Start.

i With automatic operation, you can also manually apply or release the parking brake using the control lever.

Special cases

In some situations, you may need to operate the parking brake manually.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control lever.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the braking indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

! In very cold conditions (ice), it is recommended that the parking brake not be applied.

To immobilise your vehicle, engage a gear or fit the chocks against one of the wheels.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the parking brake released.

- ☞ Switch off the engine.
Illumination of the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and control lever confirm the application of the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition again, without starting the engine.

- ☞ Release the parking brake manually by pushing the control lever while keeping your foot on the brake pedal.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the braking indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

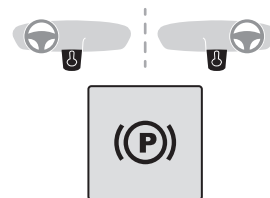
- ☞ Switch off the ignition.

i With an automatic gearbox, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked. For further information on the **Automatic gearbox**, particularly in relation to leaving the vehicle in free-wheeling mode, refer to the corresponding section.

i With an automatic gearbox, when mode **N** is engaged, the opening of the driver's door will cause an audible signal to sound. It will stop when you close the driver's door again.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or during towing (caravan, recovery), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.



- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake with the control lever, if it is released.
- ☞ Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- ☞ Push and hold the control lever in the release direction for at least 10 seconds and no more than 15 seconds.
- ☞ Release the control lever.
- ☞ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ☞ Pull the control lever in the application direction for 2 seconds.



Deactivation of the automatic functions is confirmed by illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

- ☞ Release the control lever and the brake pedal.

From now on, the parking brake can only be applied and released manually using the control lever.

Repeat this procedure to reactivate automatic operation.

Reactivation of automatic operation is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the instrument panel going off.

Emergency braking

- ! The emergency braking should only be used in an exceptional situation.

In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc.), a continuous pull on the control lever will brake the vehicle. Braking takes place while the control lever is being pulled. It is interrupted if the control lever is released.

The ABS and DSC systems provide stability of the vehicle during emergency braking.

If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake control faulty" will be displayed in the instrument panel.



If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, signalled by the illumination of one or both warning lamps in the instrument panel, then stability of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever until the vehicle is immobilised.

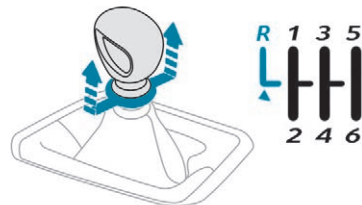
6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

- ☞ Move the gear selector fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

- ! Failure to follow this advice could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3rd or 4th gear).

Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear selector to the left, then forwards.

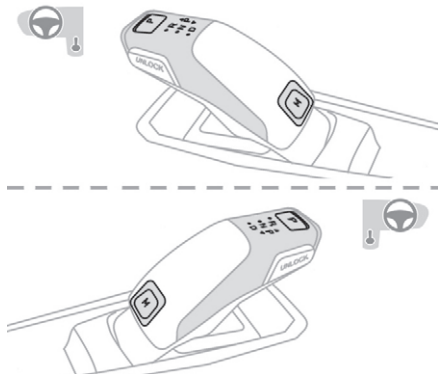
- ! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

- i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting the engine:
 - always select neutral,
 - press the clutch pedal.

Automatic gearbox (EAT6 / EAT8)

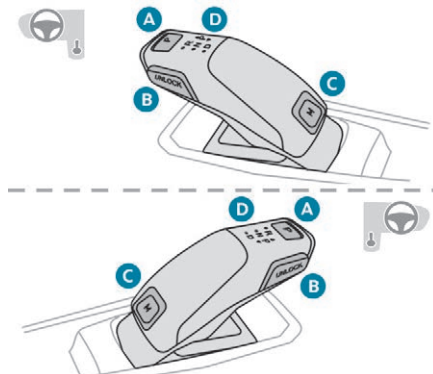
Six or eight-speed automatic gearbox with push selector. It also offers a temporary manual mode with gear changes via steering mounted control paddles, located behind the steering wheel.

Gearbox selector positions

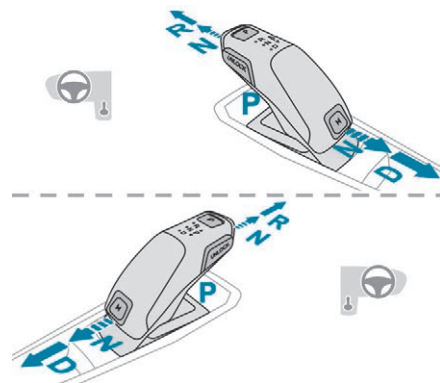


- P.** Park.
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.
- R.** Reverse.
- N.** Neutral.
For moving the vehicle with the ignition off: for some car wash machines, when towing the vehicle, etc.
- D.** Automatic mode.
The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load.
- M.** Manual mode.
The driver changes gear using the steering mounted control paddles.

Push selector



- A.** **P** button.
To put the gearbox into Parking mode.
- B.** **Unlock** button.
To unlock the gearbox and come out of **P** or change to **R**, with the foot on the brake pedal.
This button should be pressed and held before moving the selector.
- C.** **M** button. (Depending on the version: with Full Park Assist, this mode is accessed via the **DRIVE MODE** control).
To change from automatic mode **D** to permanent manual mode.
- D.** Gearbox state indicators (**P**, **R**, **N**, **D**).



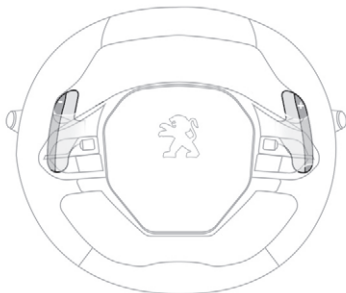
Move the selector by pressing it once or twice forward (**N** or **R**) or rearward (**N** or **D**), if necessary going beyond the point of resistance. The selector returns to its initial position when released.

For example, to change from **P** to **R**, you can optionally push forward twice without passing the point of resistance or push once beyond the point of resistance:

- In the first case, the gearbox goes from **P** to **N**, then from **N** to **R**.
- In the second case, the gearbox goes directly from **P** to **R**.

Steering mounted controls

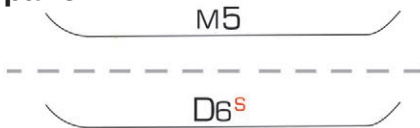
In mode **M** or **D**, the steering mounted control paddles allow the driver to change gear manually.



- ☞ Pull the right-hand "+" paddle towards you and release to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the left-hand "-" paddle towards you and release to change down a gear.

i These paddles cannot be used to engage neutral, nor to select or leave reverse gear.

Displays in the instrument panel



When the ignition is switched on, the status of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel:

P: park.

R: reverse.

N: neutral.

D1...D6 or D8: automatic mode.

S: Sport mode.

M1...M6 or M8: manual mode.

-: instruction not accepted in manual mode.

i If the driver's door is opened with the ignition on, a message is displayed asking you to put the gearbox into mode **P**. The state of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel for a few moments after switching off the ignition.

Operation

With the engine running, if it is necessary to press the brake pedal or the **Unlock** button in order to change mode, an alert message is displayed in the instrument panel. Only appropriate attempted changes of mode are accepted.

! With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.

! Never press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time – risk of damage to the gearbox!
In the event of a battery failure, you must place the chock supplied with the vehicle tools against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

Unlocking the gearbox

- From mode **P**:
 - ☞ fully depress the brake pedal,
 - ☞ press the **Unlock** button,
 - ☞ while continuing to press the brake pedal and the **Unlock** button, select another mode.
- From neutral **N**, at a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h):
 - ☞ fully depress the brake pedal,
 - ☞ while continuing to press the brake pedal, select another mode.

Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Slow down until you come to a stop.
- ☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, press the **Unlock** button.
- ☞ Select mode **R** while continuing to press the brake pedal and the **Unlock** button.

Permanent manual mode

Switching to the mode:

With EAT8 without the Full Park Assist button and EAT6:

- ☞ with mode **D** selected in advance,
- ☞ press button **M**; the green indicator lamp in the button comes on.

With EAT8 and the Full Park Assist button:

- ☞ press the **DRIVE MODE** control,
- ☞ select "Manual" mode which is displayed in the instrument panel.

Exiting the mode:

- ☞ push forwards once to go back to **D**.

or

- ☞ press button **M**; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

or

- ☞ select another mode using the **DRIVE MODE** control.

Switching off the ignition

To switch off the ignition, the vehicle must be stationary.

Changing to free-wheel

To put the vehicle in free-wheeling mode with the engine switched off:

- ☞ with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, select **N**,
- ☞ switch off the engine,
- ☞ within 5 seconds, switch the ignition on again,
- ☞ with your foot on the brake pedal, push the selector forward or back once to confirm **N** and manually release the electric parking brake,
- ☞ switch off the ignition.

After this time limit, the gearbox engages mode **P**; you should then restart the procedure.

i If you open the driver's door when mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound. It will stop when you close the driver's door again.

Special aspects of automatic mode

The gearbox selects the gear that offers optimum performance, taking account of the exterior temperature, the profile of the road, the load on the vehicle and the style of driving.

For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, push the accelerator to the floor (kick-down). The gearbox shifts down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

The steering mounted controls allow the driver to temporarily select a gear, if the road and engine speed permit.

Special aspects of manual mode

The change from one gear to another takes place only if the road speed and engine speed permit.

Starting the vehicle

From mode **P**:

- ☞ Press the brake pedal down fully.
- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, press the **Unlock** button.
- ☞ Push once or twice rearward to select the automatic mode **D**, or forward to engage reverse **R**.

From neutral **N**:

- ☞ Press the brake pedal down fully.
- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, push rearward to select the automatic mode **D**, or forward, while pressing the **Unlock** button to engage reverse **R**.

Then, from **D** or **R**:

- ☞ Release the brake pedal.
- ☞ Accelerate progressively to automatically release the electric parking brake.
- ☞ With the parking brake released, the vehicle then moves off.

i In severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), it is recommended that the engine be allowed to run for a few minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the engine and gearbox.

Stopping the vehicle

Whatever the state of the gearbox when the ignition is switched off, mode **P** is engaged automatically and immediately.

However, in mode **N**, mode **P** will be engaged after a duration of 5 seconds (allowing for the process of putting the vehicle to free-wheeling). Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake has been applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.

(P) The corresponding indicator lamps in the selector and the electric parking brake control lever must be on, as well as those in the instrument panel.

Gearbox operating fault



This is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, when the ignition is switched on.

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.

The gearbox switches to back-up mode: mode **D** is locked in third gear, the steering-mounted control paddles are inoperative, mode **M** is no longer available. You may feel a pronounced jolt when engaging reverse. This does not present any risk for the gearbox.

Selector operating fault

Minor malfunction



You are alerted by this warning lamp lighting up, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Drive cautiously and go to a PEUGEOT or a qualified workshop.

In certain cases, the selector lamps may not come on, but the state of the gearbox is still displayed in the instrument panel.

Major malfunction



You are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp.

! Stop as soon as it is safe to do so, away from the traffic, and call a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. When the ignition is switched off, the gearbox goes into mode **P** automatically.

Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

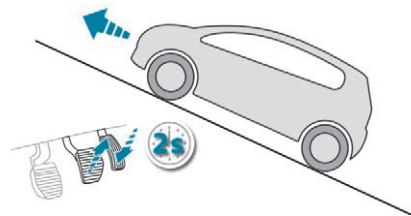
This system only operates when:

- the vehicle has been brought to a complete stop, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain slope conditions are met,
- with the driver's door closed.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist. If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp and the indicator lamp **P** in the control lever of the electric parking brake are on fixed.

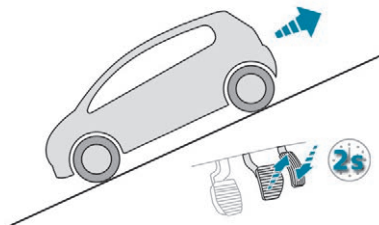
! The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, use of the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

Operation



Uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal:

- provided you are in first gear or neutral on a manual gearbox.
- provided you are in mode **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.



Downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

Operating fault



If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Active Suspension Control

This suspension can modulate itself to the following parameters: state and profile of the road, load of the vehicle, driving style and selected driving mode.

It is managed by a control unit, which interprets the data transmitted by different sensors to apply the optimal level of damping to each shock absorber according to these parameters. It offers three modes: **Comfort**, **Normal** and **Sport**.

In **Comfort** mode, it favours soft damping to improve comfort on poor road surfaces.

In **Normal** mode, it offers the best compromise between comfort and handling.

In **Sport** mode, it favours firm damping to limit body movements.

The mode can be selected using the driving modes control on the central console.

For more information on the **Driving modes**, refer to the corresponding section.

Driving modes

These various driving modes offered correspond to specific vehicle settings. This choice of driving modes depends on the vehicle's equipment.

Each time the ignition is switched on, "**Normal**" is selected by default.

Vehicle parameters	Driving modes				
	ECO	Comfort (with Active Suspension Control)	Normal	Sport	Manual (with automatic gearbox and Full Park Assist)
Accelerator	Economical	Normal	Normal	Sport	Normal
Automatic gearbox	Economical	Normal	Normal	Sport	Manual
Active Suspension Control	Soft suspension	Soft suspension	Normal suspension	Sport suspension	Normal suspension
Electric power steering	Normal	Normal	Normal	Sport	Normal
Stop & Start	Available	Available	Available	Unavailable	Available
Gear shift indicator	Economical	Normal	Normal	Normal	Normal
Heating/Air conditioning	Economical	Normal	Normal	Normal	Normal

"ECO" mode

This reduces fuel consumption, but limits the performance of the heating and air conditioning, without however deactivating them.

Free-wheeling in "ECO" mode: depending on version, with the EAT8 gearbox, moving into "free-wheeling" is encouraged to slow the vehicle down without using engine braking.

You can economise on fuel by taking your foot fully off the accelerator pedal to anticipate slowing down.

**"Comfort" mode
(with Active Suspension Control)**

Allows for more comfortable driving and a softer action of the suspension.

"Normal" mode

To return to the vehicle's original settings.

Together with Active Suspension Control, it offers the best compromise between comfort and handling.

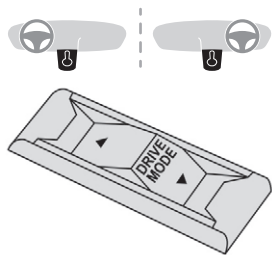
"Sport" mode

Depending on version, it allows more dynamic driving.

**Permanent "Manual" mode
(with automatic gearbox and Full Park Assist)**

It allows the manual changing of gears using the steering wheel-mounted paddles.

Choice of a mode



ECO, Comfort, Normal, Sport, Manual.

Pressing the control displays the modes in the instrument panel.

When the message goes off, the selected mode is activated and remains indicated in the instrument panel (except for "Normal" mode).



Depending on version, the choice of a driving mode is also managed by the i-Cockpit® Amplify function; refer to the corresponding section.

Gear shift indicator

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

Gear efficiency recommendations are for information only. In fact, the road layout, the traffic density and safety remain the deciding factors when choosing the best gear. The driver therefore remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the indications issued by the system.

This function cannot be deactivated.



With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an ascending or descending arrow and a recommended gear.



The system adapts its gear efficiency recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby – STOP mode – during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc.). The engine restarts automatically – START mode – as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.

Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.



Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key or the **"START/STOP"** button.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode



This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, at a speed below 2 mph (3 km/h), when you place the gear lever in neutral and release the clutch pedal,
- **with an automatic gearbox**:

- at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h) for BlueHDi versions, or below 1 mph (1 km/h) for the PureTech 180 and 225 versions, when you brake hard with the gear selector in mode **D**,
- with the vehicle stationary, when you place the gear selector in position **N**.

A time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the "START/STOP" button.

I For your comfort, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel. The Stop & Start does not affect the operation of vehicle systems, such as braking, etc.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not activated when:

- the vehicle is on a steep slope (rising or falling),
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start,
- this is necessary to maintain a comfortable

- temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- the exterior temperature is below 0°C or above +35°C,
- some temporary conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, altitude, etc.) make this necessary to ensure control of a system.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode



This indicator lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal,
- **with an automatic gearbox**:
 - gear selector in mode **D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
 - or gear selector in mode **N** and brake pedal released, when you place the gear selector in mode **D** or **M**,
 - or when you engage reverse.

Special cases: START mode activated automatically

As a safety measure or to maintain comfort levels in the vehicle, START mode is activated automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- with a manual gearbox, the vehicle speed exceeds 2.5 mph (4 km/h),
- with an automatic gearbox in mode **N**, the vehicle speed exceeds 0.6 mph (1 km/h),
- with an automatic gearbox in mode **D**, release the brake pedal,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, air conditioning setting, etc.) make this necessary to ensure control of a system or the vehicle.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

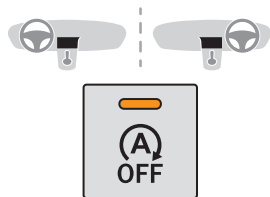
This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation/Reactivation

In certain cases, such as the need to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, it may be useful to deactivate the Stop & Start system.

The system can be deactivated at any time, once the ignition is switched on. If the engine is in STOP mode, it restarts immediately.

The Stop & Start system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched on.



☞ Press this button; the associated orange indicator lamp comes on.



Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator lamp and the display of a message in the instrument panel.

Pressing the button again reactivates the system; the associated indicator lamp goes off. The indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by the display of a message.

! Opening the bonnet

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.



! Driving on flooded roads

Before driving in a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction



In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments in the instrument panel, then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If a fault occurs in STOP mode, the engine may stall.

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on.

It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again with the "START/STOP" button.

! The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.

All work on this type of battery must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tyre under-inflation detection

This system automatically monitors the tyre pressures while driving.

The system monitors the pressures in the four tyres, once the vehicle is moving. It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.** The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

! The under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey. Driving with under-inflated tyres worsens road-holding, lengthens braking distances, causes premature wear of the tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy loads, high speeds, long journeys).

 Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

i The inflation pressures defined for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label. For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Checking tyre pressures

This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds). Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

i Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Under-inflation alert



This is indicated by continuous illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ If you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.
 - ☞ If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- or
- ☞ In case of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

i The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.

! Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.

The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.

The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.



The function is reinitialised with the vehicle stationary via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

- ☞ In this menu, select the **"Vehicle settings"** tab.
- ☞ In the page, select the **"Under-inflation initialisation"** function.
- ☞ Select **"Yes"** to confirm.

The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Malfunction



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.

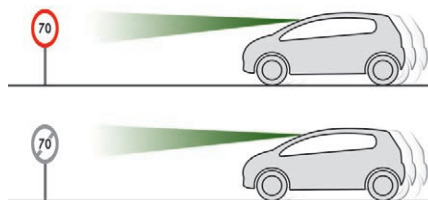
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

- i** Before doing anything to the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.

Speed Limit recognition and recommendation

! This function is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the driver's own vigilance nor compliance with the highway code. The actual signs always take priority over those suggested by the system. The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

This system displays the maximum authorised speed in the instrument panel, according to the speed limits in the country in which you are driving, using:



- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit details from the navigation system mapping.

! It is necessary to update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate information on speed limits from the system.

- Certain road signs detected by the camera (e.g. entering a built-up area).

Sign detected	Suggested speed (calculated)
Entry into built-up area Example: 	Without PEUGEOT Connect Nav 30 mph or 50 km/h (depending on the units of the instrument panel) With PEUGEOT Connect Nav Display of the speed in force in the country in which you are driving.
Entry into intersection zone Example: 	Without PEUGEOT Connect Nav 10 mph or 20 km/h (depending on the units of the instrument panel) With PEUGEOT Connect Nav Display of the speed in force in the country in which you are driving.

- Certain road sign qualifier plates detected by the camera (e.g. the speed limit if towing).

Qualifier plate detected	Display of the speed associated with the qualifier plate
Speed limit in rain Examples: 	If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wiping" or "automatic wiping" position (so that the rain sensor is activated): 68 mph (110 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit if towing 	If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle: 56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit applicable over a certain distance Example: 	43 mph (70 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit for vehicles whose gross vehicle weight or gross train weight is less than 3.5 tonnes 	56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit in snow Example: 	If the exterior temperature is below 3°C: 19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "snowflake" symbol
Speed limit at certain times Example: 	19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "clock" symbol

! The units for the speed limits (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.
 It should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit.
 For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving aid system and does not always display speed limits correctly.
 The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system.
 The system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
 The driver must observe the driving regulations and must adapt the speed of the vehicle to suit the weather and traffic conditions.
 It is possible for the system to not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period.
 The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

i To maintain correct operation of the system: regularly clean the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

i Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed. The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Activation/Deactivation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



The function is activated and deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Displays in the instrument panel



1. Detected speed limit indication. or
2. Indication of the end of the speed limit.



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.



For a suggested maximum speed, the first time that the vehicle's speed exceeds it by **more than 3 mph (5 km/h)** (example: 59 mph

(95 km/h)), the speed flashes for 10 seconds.

Operating limits

The legislation on speed limits is specific to each country.

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits in the following cases:

- atmospheric pollution,
- when towing,
- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- puncture repair using the temporary repair kit,
- young drivers, etc.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, rain, fog),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- fault with the camera,
- obsolete or incorrect mapping,
- hidden road signs (other vehicles, vegetation, snow),
- speed limit signs that do not conform to the standard, are damaged or distorted.

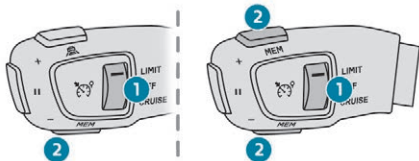
Recommendation



In addition to **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, the driver can select the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control memorisation button.

i For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter/cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.

Display in the instrument panel



3. Speed limit indication.
4. Offer to memorise the speed.
5. Current speed setting.

Memorising the speed



☞ Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control. The speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.

On detection of a sign offering a new speed limit, the system displays the value and "MEM" flashes for a few seconds to offer to make it a new speed setting.

i If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (9 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation, the "MEM" symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.

☞ Press button **2** **once** to save the suggested speed value.

A message is displayed to confirm the request.

☞ Press button **2** **again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.

After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the current display.

Extended Traffic Sign Recognition



Using the camera installed at the top of the windscreen, this additional system recognises these road signs and displays them in the instrument panel.

One-way street: if you start driving down a one-way street the wrong way, an alert message, including the sign's symbol, is displayed in the instrument panel (request to check the traffic direction).

Other signs: when approaching one of these signs, the sign's symbol is displayed in the instrument panel.

! This function is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the driver's own vigilance nor compliance with the highway code. The actual signs always take priority over the display by the system. The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Activation/Deactivation



The activation and deactivation is done in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Speed limiter



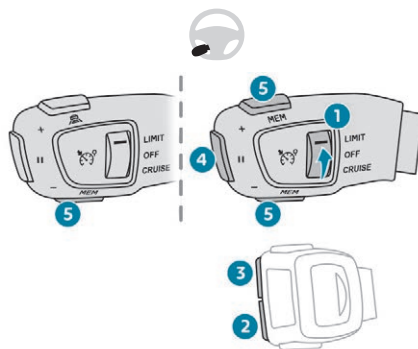
This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually. The minimum programmed speed is 19 mph (30 km/h).

The programmed speed value remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

! The speed limiter is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

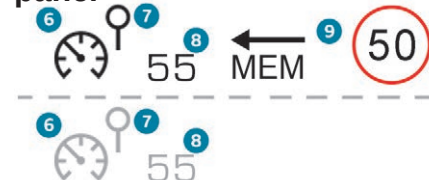
Steering mounted control



1. Select speed limiter mode.
2. Decrease the programmed value.
3. Increase the programmed value.
4. Speed limiter On/Pause.
5. Depending on version:
Display of speed thresholds in the memory with the programmable speed limiter or
Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter On/Off indication.
7. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
8. Programmed speed value.
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system (depending on version).

Switching on/pausing



- ☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "LIMIT" position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.



- ☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.

- ☞ Pressing button **4** again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

i When the programmed speed remains below the vehicle's speed for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning will sound.

Adjusting the limit speed (setting)

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.

This setting becomes the new limit speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the speed suggested by the vehicle Speed Limit recognition and recommendation:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

- ☞ If you want to temporarily exceed the programmed limit speed, press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**.



The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes. If it is exceeded for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning ends up being triggered. Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver (in case of a steep slope for example), an audible signal triggers immediately.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle.



Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.

Switching off

- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **"OFF"** position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Malfunction



Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the speed limiter.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

- !** The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter.
- To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
 - never fit one mat on top of another.

Programmable cruise control



System which automatically maintains the cruising speed of the vehicle at a setting programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is **switched on** manually. It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).

With a manual gearbox, it requires the engagement of third gear or higher.
With an automatic gearbox, it requires the engagement of the selector in mode **D** or of second gear or higher in mode **M**.

- i** The cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on vehicles fitted with Stop & Start.

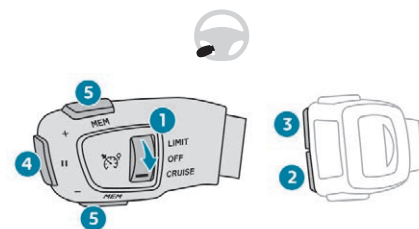
The operation of the cruise control can be temporarily interrupted (pause):

- by pressing control **4** or by pressing the brake pedal,
- automatically, if operation of the dynamic stability control system is triggered.

- i** Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

- !** The cruise control system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. As a safety measure, you are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.

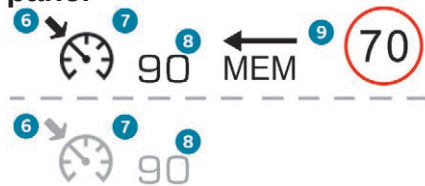
Steering mounted control



1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Use the current speed as the speed setting/Lower the speed setting.
3. Use the current speed as the speed setting/Raise the speed setting.
4. Pause/Resume cruise control.
5. Depending on the version:
Display of speed thresholds in the memory with the programmable cruise control or
Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or on **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
7. Cruise control mode selection indication.
8. Value of the speed setting.
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system (depending on version).

Switching on/pausing



- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **CRUISE** position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.



- ☞ To start the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting. You can release the accelerator pedal.



- ☞ Pressing button **4** interrupts operation of the system (pause).
- ☞ Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

Modifying the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

! Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments. This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the speed suggested by the vehicle Speed Limit recognition and recommendation:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make an initial press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

If needed (for overtaking, etc.) it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.



The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the programmed speed setting flashes. To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.



Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control takes over again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.

! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused. To activate the system again, with the speed of the vehicle above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

Switching off

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **"OFF"** position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Malfunction



Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the cruise control system.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow driving, for a period of time, at a constant speed and at an adequate safe distance. Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, or in conditions of poor visibility (heavy rain, fog, falling snow, etc.). In some circumstances, it may not be possible to maintain or reach the cruise speed set: towing, vehicle heavily loaded, steep climb.

! The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the cruise control. To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Memorising speeds

Linked to the speed limiter and programmable cruise control, this function allows speed limits to be registered which will then be suggested as settings for these two systems.

You can memorise several speed settings for each system.

By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only modify the speed settings when stationary.

Changing a speed setting



From the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen, select "**Driving functions**", then "**Memorised speed settings**".

"MEM" button



With this button, you can select a memorised speed setting to use with the speed limiter or the programmable cruise control.

For more information on the **Speed limiter** or **Cruise control**, refer to the associated section.

Drive Assist Plus

This system provides active assistance in keeping the vehicle in position in its lane.

It results from the combination of the Adaptive cruise control with Stop & Go function and the Lane Positioning Assist.

These two functions must be activated and in operation.

These functions are especially suitable for driving on motorways and main roads.

For more information on the **Adaptive cruise control** and the **Lane Positioning Assist**, refer to the corresponding sections.

! This system is a driving aid that cannot, under any circumstances, replace driver vigilance and respect of the speed limits and safety distances. The system assists the driver by operating the steering, acceleration and braking within the limits of the laws of physics and vehicle performance. Some road infrastructure elements or vehicles present on the road may not be properly detected or interpreted by the camera and radar, which may lead to an unexpected change in direction, a lack of steering correction and/or inappropriate management of the acceleration or braking.

Adaptive cruise control



This system provides the following functions:

- Automatically maintains the vehicle at the speed set by the driver.
- Automatic adjustment of the distance between your vehicle and the one in front.

With an automatic gearbox, automatic adjustment of the distance can cause your vehicle to come to a complete stop.

For the versions fitted with the EAT8 gearbox, your vehicle can restart automatically.

- i The cruise control remains active after changing gear regardless of the gearbox type.

It manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle by automatically acting on the engine and the braking system.



For this purpose there is a camera located at the top of the windscreen, and, depending on the version, a radar installed in the front bumper.

- ! Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works on **moving vehicles**, driving in the **same direction** as your vehicle.

Principle of operation

The system automatically adapts the speed of your vehicle to that of the vehicle in front, to maintain a constant distance.

If the vehicle in front is driving more slowly, the system slows, or even stops your vehicle, using engine braking and the braking system (for versions fitted with an automatic gearbox).

For versions fitted with the EAT8 automatic gearbox, if traffic conditions allow and the stop was for less than 3 seconds, your vehicle restarts automatically.

If the vehicle in front accelerates or changes lane, the cruise control progressively accelerates your vehicle to return to the programmed speed.

If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the cruise control allows your vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, though never exceeding the programmed speed.

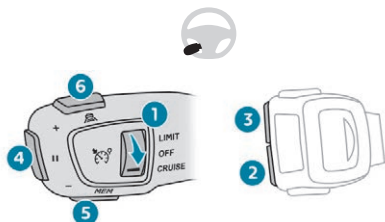
- i The brake lamps illuminate as soon as the braking system is activated with deceleration of the vehicle.

- ! This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits and safety distances, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Some vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and/or radar (e.g. a lorry), which may lead to a poor assessment of the distances and lead to the vehicle inappropriately accelerating or braking.

The driver must be ready at all times to retake control of their vehicle by permanently holding both hands on the steering wheel and keeping their feet near the brake and accelerator pedals.

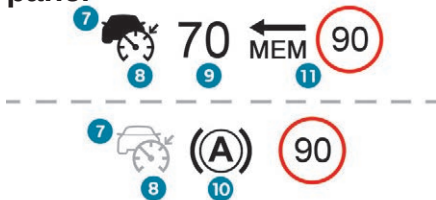
Steering mounted control



1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Use the current speed as the speed setting/Lower the speed setting.
3. Use the current speed as the speed setting/Raise the speed setting.
4. Pause/Resume cruise control/Confirmation of the restart of the vehicle after automatic stop (for versions equipped with the Stop & Go function).
5. Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance.

For more information on **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

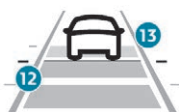
Displays in the instrument panel



7. Indication of the presence/absence of a target vehicle.
8. Indication of cruise control activation/deactivation.
9. Value of the speed setting.
10. Indication that vehicle is held stationary (versions fitted with an automatic gearbox).
11. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.

As soon as a vehicle is detected, the symbol 7 is filled with the colour associated with the cruise control mode. By default, the symbol 7 is empty.

When the cruise control is in operation, the symbols 7 and 8 are displayed in green. By default, they are displayed in grey.



12. Inter-vehicle distance setting.

13. Position of vehicle detected by the system.

This information is visible in the instrument panel in "DRIVING" display mode.

Switching on

- ☞ With the engine running, turn the thumbwheel 1 to the "CRUISE" position. The system is paused (grey display).

With a manual gearbox

With the speed of the vehicle between 19 and 99 mph (30 and 160 km/h):

- ☞ With the vehicle moving, press one of the buttons 2 or 3: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting. The cruise control starts operating (displayed in green).

With an automatic gearbox

Mode **D** or **M** must be selected.

With the **EAT6** gearbox and the speed of the vehicle between 0 and 112 mph (0 and 180 km/h):

- ☞ Accelerate slightly and press one of the buttons 2 or 3: the system starts (green display).

With the **EAT8** gearbox and the speed of the vehicle between 0 and 112 mph (0 and 180 km/h):

- ☞ Press one of the buttons 2 or 3: the system starts (green display).

The cruise speed setting then becomes equal to:

- the current speed of your vehicle, if it is over 19 mph (30 km/h),
- 19 mph (30 km/h), if it is below 19 mph (30 km/h).

Remembering the settings

Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting value chosen by the driver.

By default, the inter-vehicle distance is set at "**Normal**" (2 dashes). Otherwise, the last setting made will be used when switching on the system.

Pause

The cruise control can be **paused** manually by:

- action by the driver:
 - On the button **4** (Pause).
 - On the brake pedal.
 - On the electric parking brake control.
 - On the clutch pedal, by pressing and holding for more than 5 seconds.
 - When changing from mode **D** to **N** with an automatic gearbox.
- or automatically:
 - If the ESC system is activated, for safety reasons.
 - When the speed of the vehicle falls below 19 mph (30 km/h) with a manual gearbox.

! When the cruise control is paused, it can only be reactivated when all of the safety conditions are met. The "Activation denied, conditions unsuitable" message is displayed if reactivation is not possible.

Reactivating the function

With a manual gearbox

To reactivate the function, the driver must accelerate to reach at least 19 mph (30 km/h), then press one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.

With the EAT6 automatic gearbox

Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused. The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then reactivate the system above 1 mph (2 km/h) by pressing button **2**, **3** or **4**. If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a while (approx. five minutes).

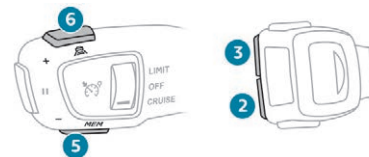
With the EAT8 automatic gearbox

Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, if the traffic conditions do not allow the vehicle to be restarted immediately,

the driver must confirm the vehicle restart by pressing button **4** or the accelerator pedal. If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a while (approx. five minutes).

! As a safety measure, wait until the current speed approaches the speed setting to reactivate the function by pressing button **4**.

Modification of the speed setting



With the engine running and cruise control on (green), you can modify the speed setting.

From the current speed

- ☞ By successive short presses on button **2** or **3**, to lower or raise the setting in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h).
- ☞ By a maintained press on button **2** or **3**, to lower or raise the setting in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h).

! Take care: pressing and holding button 2 or 3 results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

From the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system

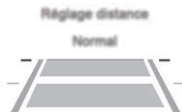
- ☞ The suggested speed is displayed in the instrument panel.
- ☞ Make an initial press on button 5; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
- ☞ Press button 5 again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

For more information on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that you select a cruise speed close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

Modification of the programmed inter-vehicle distance



Three threshold settings are suggested for the inter-vehicle distance:

- "Distant" (3 dashes),
- "Normal" (2 dashes),
- "Close" (1 dash).

Engine running and with the thumbwheel at the "CRUISE" position:

- ☞ Press button 6 to display the selection screen for inter-vehicle distance.
- ☞ By pressing button 6 repeatedly, cycle through the predefined settings.

The selection screen closes after a few seconds.

The change then takes effect.

This setting remains memorised, whatever the state of the system and when the ignition is switched off.

i The selection also applies to the stopping distance (with EAT6 and EAT8 automatic gearbox).

Exceeding the programmed setting

It is possible to exceed the speed setting temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control no longer manages the braking system during this period.

Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

If the programmed speed setting is exceeded, the display of the speed setting disappears and a message "Cruise control suspended" is displayed until the accelerator pedal is released.

Driving situations and associated alerts

To benefit from all necessary information in the instrument panel, you must previously select the "DRIVING" display mode.

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situation.

The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Warning/ Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
 (grey)		"Cruise control paused"	System paused. No vehicle detected.
 (grey)		"Cruise control paused"	System paused. A vehicle has been detected.
 70 (green)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. No vehicle detected.
 70 (green)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. A vehicle has been detected.
 or  (green)		"Cruise control suspended"	System activated. The driver has temporarily taken control of the vehicle by accelerating.

Warning/ Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
 (green)	 (orange)	"Take back control of the vehicle"	The driver must take back control of the vehicle by accelerating or braking, depending on the circumstances.
 (green)	 (red)	"Take back control of the vehicle"	The system cannot manage the critical situation alone (emergency braking of the target vehicle, rapid insertion of another vehicle between the two vehicles). The driver must immediately take back control of the vehicle.
 or  (grey)	 (orange)	"Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable"	The system refuses to activate the cruise control. For more information, refer to Operating limits .

With the EAT6 automatic gearbox – Stop function.

The table below describes the alerts and messages associated with the automatic stopping of the vehicle by the system.

Warning/ Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
 or  (grey)/(green)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected and the actual distance from the target vehicle	"Cruise control paused" (for a few seconds)	The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is holding it immobilised. The driver must accelerate to move off again. The cruise control remains paused until the driver reactivates it.

Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused.

The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then reactivate the system by pressing one of buttons **2**, **3** or **4**. If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a while (approximately 5 minutes).

With the EAT8 automatic gearbox – Stop & Go function

Warning/ Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
 or  (green)			Automatic restarting of the vehicle within 3 seconds of stopping (if conditions so allow).
 or  (green)		"To move off again: accelerate or press the button II"	Manual restarting with confirmation from the driver if more than 3 seconds have elapsed since stopping (if conditions so allow): by pressing button 4 or the accelerator pedal.

After braking causing the vehicle to stop completely, if the vehicle in front restarts almost immediately, the system restarts the vehicle gradually, keeping the safety distance as programmed up to the speed setting.

If the vehicle is immobilised for more than 3 seconds, simply press button **4** or the accelerator pedal to restart as soon as traffic conditions allow.

The vehicle will accelerate gradually up to the speed setting.

If the vehicle continues to be immobilised, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a while (approx. five minutes). To restart the vehicle, the driver must press the accelerator pedal.

! During the vehicle immobilisation phase, it is recommended:

- Not to open the doors.
- Not to drop off or pick up passengers.
- Not to engage reverse gear.

! When the vehicle restarts, watch out for cyclists, pedestrians or animals which may not be detected properly.

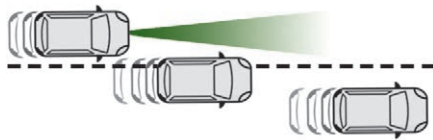
Operating limits

The system cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.

Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

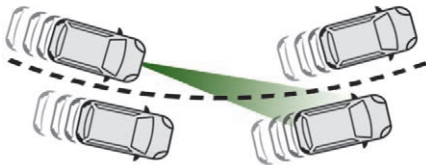
Cases of non-detection by the system:

- Pedestrians, some cyclists, animals.
- Stationary vehicles (traffic jam, breakdown, etc.).

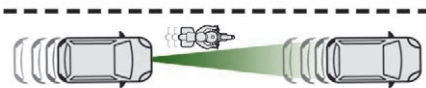


- Vehicles crossing your lane.
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

When the driver must suspend the cruise control system:



- Vehicles in a tight bend.
- When approaching a roundabout.

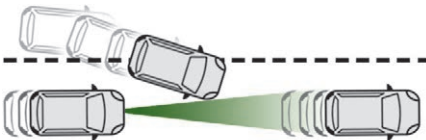


- When following a narrow vehicle.

Reactivate cruise control when conditions permit.

Cases where the driver is urged to take back control immediately:

- Excessively sharp deceleration of the vehicle in front of you.



- When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

The system must not be activated in the following situations:

- Use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel (depending on version).
- Towing.
- Following an impact on the windscreen close to the camera or on the front bumper (versions with radar).
- Adverse weather conditions (especially for versions with camera only).

! Be particularly careful:

- When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered onto the traffic lane.
- When you enter a tunnel or cross a bridge.

! The cruise control operates by day and night, in fog or moderate rainfall. However, it is strongly recommended that you always keep a safe distance from vehicles ahead, according to the driving conditions, the weather and the road surface.

Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and keeping an adequate safety distance.

Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas where pedestrians are likely to cross the road, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, when there is snowfall, if the front bumper or windscreen is damaged or when the brake lamps have failed. In certain circumstances, it may not be possible for the speed setting to be maintained or even attained: loaded vehicle, ascending a steep hill, etc.

! The system is not intended for the following situations:

- if the front end of the vehicle has been modified (addition of long-range headlamps, painting of the front bumper),
- driving on a racing circuit,
- running on a rolling road,
- use of snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
- never place one mat on top of another.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- driving on a winding road,
- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- camera or radar obstructed (mud, frost, snow, condensation, etc.).

In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

! Operation of the radar, located in the front bumper, may be impaired by the accumulation of dirt (dust, mud, etc.) or in certain weather conditions (snow, frost, etc.).

Do not stick any items to the radar's protective cover.

Clean the front bumper regularly.

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the detection camera.

Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle, as this could obscure the camera.

! If the front bumper is to be repainted or retouched, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. Certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.

Malfunction



If the cruise control malfunctions, dashes are displayed instead of the cruise control speed setting.

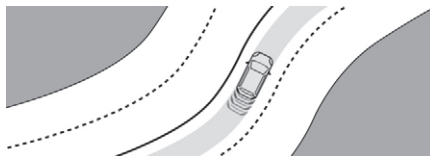


If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message and an audible signal, this confirms a malfunction.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The adaptive cruise control deactivates automatically if the use of a "space-saver" type spare wheel is detected or if there is a malfunction on the lateral brake lamps or trailer brake lamps (for approved trailers).

Lane Positioning Assist



Using a camera located at the top of the windscreen, the system identifies lane markings and steers the vehicle inside this lane to keep it in the lateral position chosen by the driver.

This function is primarily suitable for driving on motorways and main roads.

! This system is a driving aid that cannot, under any circumstances, replace driver vigilance and respect of the speed limits and safety distances.

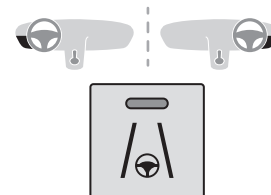
The system does not assess the behaviour of other vehicles. Therefore, the driver must be ready at all times to retake control of their vehicle by permanently holding the steering wheel with both hands and keeping their feet near the brake and accelerator pedals. The function cannot be used to compensate for loss of vigilance caused by driver inattention or fatigue. It is recommended to take a break every two hours.

Conditions for operation

- The adaptive cruise control with Stop & Go function must be active.
- The vehicle must be travelling in a traffic lane clearly delimited on both sides.
- The ESC system must be operating.
- The ASR must not be deactivated.
- No trailer detected.
- Small-diameter, "space-saver" type spare wheel not being used.
- The vehicle must not be subjected to strong lateral accelerations.
- The direction indicators must not be activated.

Activation/Deactivation

i The state of the system stays in memory when the ignition is switched off.



ⓘ With the adaptive cruise control with Stop & Go function activated, press this button.

The action is confirmed by:

- Illumination of the green button indicator lamp.
- Display of the following symbol in the instrument panel.

The colour of the symbol depends on the operating state of the system:



(grey colour)

At least one of the operating conditions is not met, the system is paused.



(green colour)

All operating conditions are met, the system is active.



(orange colour)

The system has a fault.

If the driver no longer wishes to benefit from the system, they can deactivate it by pressing the button again.

The button indicator lamp goes off and the symbol disappears from the instrument panel.

Regulation

The driver must hold the steering wheel properly. When regulation is activated, the symbol is displayed in green: by small steering actions, the system directs the vehicle and keeps it in the position chosen by the driver, in the traffic lane. The driver can feel movements in the steering wheel.

This position is not necessarily the centre of the lane.

The driver can change the position of the vehicle at any time, by turning the steering wheel. When the driver feels that the vehicle's position is appropriate, whilst keeping hands on the steering wheel, they must release the pressure to let the system resume control of the steering, but the vehicle will not get centred within the lane automatically.

Pausing/Suspension of the system



The driver must intervene as soon as they believe that the traffic conditions or state of the road surface make this necessary by moving the steering wheel to suspend the system temporarily. Pressing the brake pedal to pause the cruise control will also pause the system.



If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough, it triggers a series of gradual alerts and then deactivates if there is no reaction from the driver.

After suspension due to the prolonged release of pressure holding the steering wheel, you must reactivate the function by pressing the button again.

Automatic pausing:

- Triggering of the ESC.
- Prolonged failure to detect one of the lane markings. In this case, the Active Lane Keeping Assistance function can take over, and the system will reactivate itself once the operating conditions are met once again.

On action by the driver: suspension

- Activation of the direction indicators.
- Travelling outside the lane limits.
- Too tight a grip on the steering wheel or dynamic action on the steering wheel.
- Action on the brake pedal (pausing the cruise control until its reactivation) or accelerator pedal (suspension during the time when the pedal is pressed).
- Pausing the cruise control.
- Deactivation of the ASR.

Driving situations and associated alerts

The tables below describe the displays associated with the main driving situations. The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Button indicator lamp	Cruise control thumbwheel	Symbols	Comments
Off	OFF	-	No function is activated.
Off	Cruise	 70 (grey)	Cruise control paused; Lane Positioning Assist not active.
Off	Cruise	 70 (green)	Cruise control active; Lane Positioning Assist not active.
Green	Cruise	 70  (green)	Drive Assist Plus active, operates normally.
Green	Cruise	 70  (grey)	Drive Assist Plus paused.

Button indicator lamp	Cruise control thumbwheel	Symbols	Comments
Green	Cruise	 70  (green)/(grey)	Drive Assist Plus active, not all conditions required for Lane Positioning Assist have been met.
Green	OFF or Limit	 70 (grey)	Cruise control not active, not all conditions required for Lane Positioning Assist have been met.
Green	Cruise	 --  (green)/(grey)	Drive Assist Plus suspended: cruise control and Lane Positioning Assist are suspended.
Green	-	 (orange)	Lane Positioning Assist fault.

Messages	Driving situations
"Activate the cruise control to use the Lane Positioning Assist system"	Activation of the Lane Positioning Assist while the cruise control is not active.
"Unsuitable conditions, activation on stand-by"	Activation of the Lane Positioning Assist while not all conditions are met.
"Cruise control and Lane Positioning Assist suspended"	Suspension of the cruise control and the Lane Positioning Assist.
"Keep your hands on the steering wheel"	Prolonged driving without holding the steering wheel, holding it improperly or without applying any force.
"Hold the wheel"	Actual or imminent loss of the Lane Positioning Assist.
"Resume control"	Simultaneous loss of the cruise control and the Lane Positioning Assist.

Operating limits

- i** The Lane Positioning Assist system may emit an alert when the vehicle is travelling in a long straight lane on a smooth road surface even if the driver is holding the steering wheel properly.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- Poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, snowfall, rain, fog).
- Dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a wet road surface, leaving a tunnel, alternating light and shade).
- Windscreen area in front of the camera being dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or masked by a sticker.
- Lane markings damaged, partially hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, pavement seams).
- Travelling in a tight bend.
- Winding roads.

! The system must not be activated in the following situations:

- When driving on a small-diameter spare wheel.
- When towing, especially with an unconnected or unapproved trailer.
- Unfavourable climatic conditions.
- Driving on slippery road surfaces (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
- Driving on racing circuits.
- Driving on a rolling road.

Recommendations on care

- Regularly check that the front bumper and the area of the windscreen located in front of the camera are clean.
- Regularly check that the windscreen wipers are in good condition.
- In bad weather, or during the winter, ensure that the front bumper and windscreen are not covered with mud, ice or snow.

Operating faults



(orange colour)

A system malfunction is indicated by the Service warning lamp coming on and this (orange) symbol, accompanied by an alert message and an audible signal.

Active Safety Brake with Distance Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance



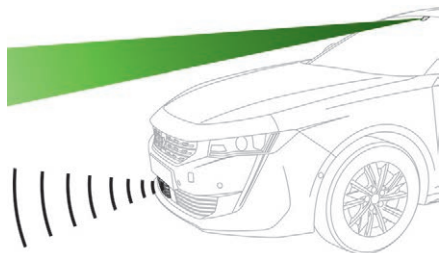
This system allows:

- the driver to be warned that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front, a pedestrian or, depending on the version, a cyclist,
- a collision to be prevented, or its severity to be limited, by reducing the vehicle's speed.

- i** The system also takes motorcyclists and animals into account; however, animals below 0.5 m and objects on the road are not necessarily detected.

This system is a driving aid that includes three functions:

- Distance Alert (alert if there is a risk of collision),
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance,
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a multifunctional camera located at the top of the windscreen, and, depending on the version, a radar located in the front bumper.

! This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety. It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations. This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

i As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



This system can be deactivated or activated via the touch screen's **Driving/Vehicle** menu.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating conditions and limits

The ESC system must not be faulty.
 The ASR must not be deactivated.
 All passenger seat belts must be fastened.
 Driving at a steady speed on roads with few bends is required.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- camera or radar obstructed (mud, frost, snow, condensation, etc.).

On versions with camera alone, this message indicates to you that the camera is obstructed: **"Driving aids camera: Visibility limited, see user guide"**. In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

! Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera. Clean the front bumper, especially around the radar, removing mud, snow, etc.

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:

- towing a trailer,
- carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack,
- with snow chains fitted,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop,
- towed vehicle, engine running,
- following impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.

i The system is automatically deactivated after detecting the use of certain "space-saver" type spare wheels (smaller diameter).
The system is automatically deactivated after detecting a fault with the brake pedal switch or with at least two brake lamps.

! It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Consequently, always stay in control of your vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

! After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

! If the front bumper is to be repainted or retouched, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. Certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.

Distance Alert

It warns the driver if their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front, a pedestrian or a cyclist present in their traffic lane.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be alerted of the presence of a moving or stationary vehicle in front of you, a pedestrian or a cyclist present in your traffic lane.



The current threshold can be modified via the touch screen's **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

You can select one of three predefined thresholds:

- **"Distant"**,
- **"Normal"**,
- **"Close"**.

The last threshold selected is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert can be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.

They take account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions, the operation of the vehicle (cornering, actions on the pedals, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.



Level 1 (orange): visual alert only, signalling to you that the vehicle in front is very close.

The message **"Vehicle close"** is displayed.



Level 2 (red): visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.

The message **"Brake!"** is displayed.

Level 3: finally, in some cases, a haptic alert in the form of micro-braking may be given to confirm the risk of collision.

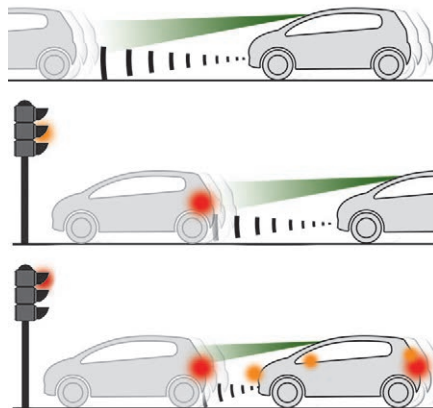
i Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.

Important: the level 1 alert is never displayed for a stationary obstacle or when the "Close" trigger threshold has been selected.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alerts if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.

It aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision by your vehicle where the driver fails to react.

Operation

The system operates under the following conditions:

- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle or a cyclist is detected.

- The vehicle's speed must be above 6 mph (10 km/h) (versions with camera and radar) or between 6 mph and 53 mph (10 km/h and 85 km/h) (versions with camera alone) when a moving vehicle is detected.

 If the camera and/or radar have confirmed the presence of a vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist, this warning lamp flashes (for about 10 seconds) when the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.

With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.

With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

i The driver can maintain control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

i Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Malfunction



In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the continuous illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.



If these warning lamps come on after the engine has been switched off and restarted, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.



Fatigue detection system

Take a break as soon as you feel tired or at least every two hours.

The function comprises the "Driver Attention Warning" system combined with the "Driver Attention Alert".



These systems cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver who must remain in control of their decisions. In no case can these systems keep the driver awake or prevent them from falling asleep at the wheel.

It is the driver's responsibility to stop if they feel tired.

Activation/Deactivation



These functions are activated and deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

The state of the system is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Driver Attention Warning



The system triggers an alert once it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).

This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.

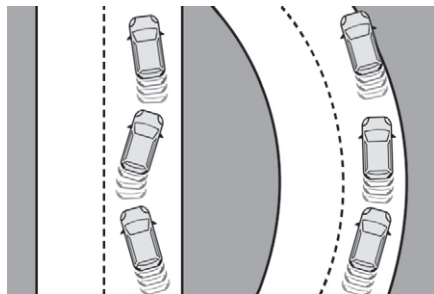
If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

- engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,
- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is open.

As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby. The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Driver Attention Alert



Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.

This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h)).

When the system interprets the behaviour of the vehicle as indicating a certain fatigue or inattention threshold on the part of the driver, it triggers the first level of alert.

The driver is then alerted by the message "**Take care!**", accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with the message "**Take a break!**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

- i** In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- poor visibility (inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

! Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera.

Active Blind Spot Monitoring System

In addition to the fixed warning lamp in the door mirror on the side in question, a correction of trajectory will be felt if you attempt to cross a lane marking with the direction indicators on, to help you avoid a collision.

This system is the combination of the Active Lane Keeping Assistance and Blind Spot Detection.

These two functions must be activated and in operation.

The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 87 mph (65 and 140 km/h) inclusive.

These functions are especially suitable for driving on motorways and main roads.

For more information on the **Active Lane**

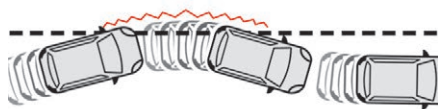
Keeping Assistance and Blind Spot

Detection, refer to the corresponding sections.

! This system is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Active Lane Keeping Assistance

Using a camera located at the top of the windscreen to identify lane markings on the ground and the edges of the road (depending on version), the system corrects the trajectory of the vehicle while alerting the driver if it detects a risk of involuntarily crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version). This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Conditions for operation

The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 mph and 112 mph (65 km/h and 180 km/h). The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands.

The change of trajectory must not be accompanied by operation of the direction indicators.

The ESC system must be activated and fault-free.

! This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the driver's own vigilance. The driver must remain in control of the vehicle under all circumstances.

The system helps the driver only when there is a risk of the vehicle involuntarily wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, the speed of the vehicle or the brakes.

The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands in a way that allows control to be maintained in circumstances where the system is not able to intervene (if lane markings disappear, for example). It is necessary to observe the driving regulations and take a break every two hours.

Operation

Once the system identifies a risk of the vehicle involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected on the ground or a lane limit (e.g. grass border), it makes the correction to the trajectory necessary to return the vehicle to its initial path.

The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

i If the driver wishes to maintain the trajectory of the vehicle, they can prevent the correction by keeping a firm grip on the wheel (during an avoiding manoeuvre, for example). The correction is interrupted if the direction indicators are operated.



While the direction indicators are on and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that any change of trajectory is voluntary and no correction is triggered during this period.

However, with the Blind Spot Detection activated, if the driver starts changing lanes and another vehicle is detected in the vehicle's blind spot, the system will correct the trajectory of the vehicle even though the direction indicators are on.

For more information on the **Blind Spot Detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

Driving situations and associated alerts

To benefit from all necessary information in the instrument panel, you must previously select the "DRIVING" display mode.
The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situation.
The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Status of the function	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
OFF		 (grey)	System deactivated.
ON		 (grey)	System active, conditions not met: - speed below 40 mph (65 km/h), - no lane marking recognised, - ESC deactivated or operation triggered, - "sporty" driving.
ON		 (grey)	Automatic deactivation/standby of the system (for example: detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" spare wheel provided with the vehicle).

Status of the function	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
ON		 (green)	Detection of lane markings. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON		 (orange)/(green)	The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of involuntary crossing is detected (orange line).
ON		 (orange)/(green) "Take control of the vehicle".	- If, during correction, the system detects that the driver has not held the wheel for a few seconds, it interrupts the correction and returns control to the driver. - During correction of the trajectory, if the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line is crossed (orange line): the driver is warned that they must complete the correction of the trajectory.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:

- ESC deactivated or operation triggered,
- speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h),
- connected electrically to a trailer,
- use of the "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended),
- dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal,
- driving where there are no lane markings,
- activation of the direction indicators,
- crossing the inside line on a bend,
- driving in a tight corner,
- inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- conditions of poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, snowfall, rain, fog),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- running close to the vehicle in front (the lane markings may not be detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Risk of undesirable operation

Deactivation of the system is recommended in the following situations:

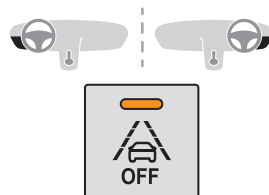
- driving on a road surface in poor condition,
- unfavourable climatic conditions,
- driving on slippery surfaces (ice).

The system is not intended for driving in the following situations:

- driving on a speed circuit,

- driving with a trailer,
- driving on a rolling stand,
- driving on unstable surfaces.

Deactivation/Activation



Press and hold this button to deactivate the system at any time.



Deactivation is signalled by the illumination of the indicator lamp in the button and of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Reactivation is achieved by a short press.

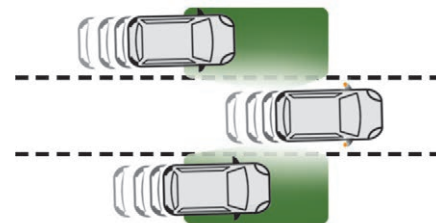
The system is **reactivated** every time the ignition is switched on.

Malfunction

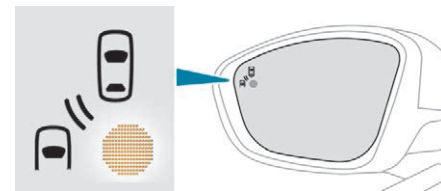


In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the illumination of these warning lamps in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Blind Spot Detection



This system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spots of their vehicle (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



A fixed warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

! This driving aid system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the relative distances and speeds of other vehicles and to anticipate their movements before deciding whether to change lane. This system is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Activation/Deactivation



The function is activated and deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

The state of the system is memorised when switching off the ignition.

i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by PEUGEOT.

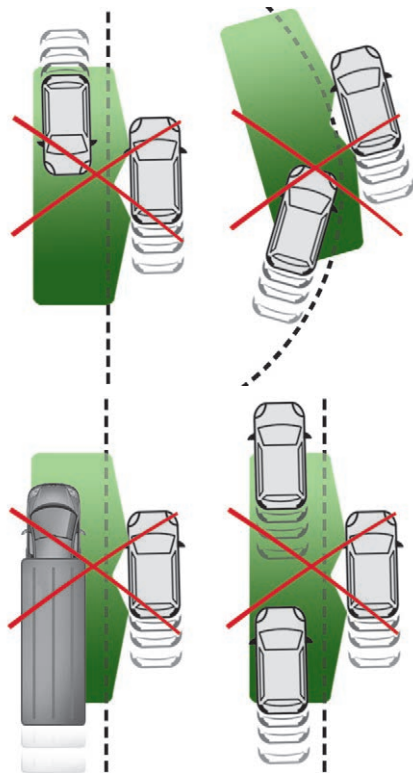
Operation

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.

The alert is given by an orange warning lamp coming on in the relevant door mirror, as soon as a vehicle – car, lorry, bicycle – is detected.

The following conditions must be met for this:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes,
- the speed of the vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h) (versions without Park Assist or Full Park Assist),
- the speed of the vehicle must be between 19 and 87 mph (30 and 140 km/h) (versions with Park Assist or Full Park Assist),
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 16 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic is flowing normally,
- overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.



No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),

- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner,
- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) which is both in the rear blind spot and present in the driver's front field of vision,
- when overtaking quickly,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- if the Park Assist or Full Park Assist function is activated.

Malfunction



If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

i The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).

In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.

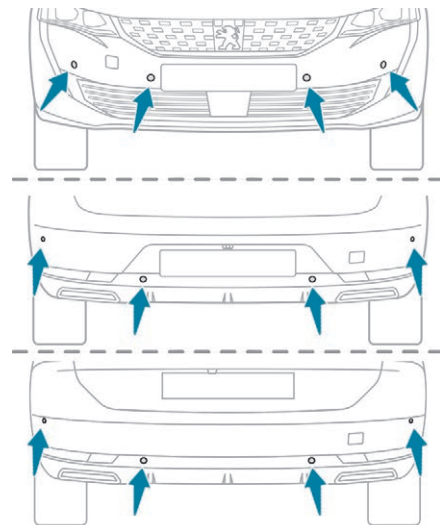
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by PEUGEOT.

! High-pressure washing

When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 12 inches (30 cm) away from the sensors.

Parking sensors



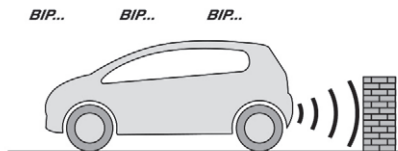
Using sensors located in the bumper, this function warns of the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) entering their field of detection.

! This function is a manoeuvring aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must remain attentive and stay in control of their vehicle. They must always check the vehicle's surroundings before undertaking a manoeuvre. During the entire manoeuvre, the driver must ensure that the space remains clear.

Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear. This is confirmed by an audible signal. The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance



The function signals the presence of obstacles both within the sensor detection zone and in the vehicle path defined by the orientation of the steering wheel.

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle. When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the sound signal becomes continuous.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

Adjusting the audible signal



In versions equipped with PEUGEOT Connect Radio, pressing this button opens the audible signal volume adjustment window.

Visual assistance



It supplements the audible assistance, without taking account of the vehicle's trajectory, by displaying bars on the screen that represent the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle

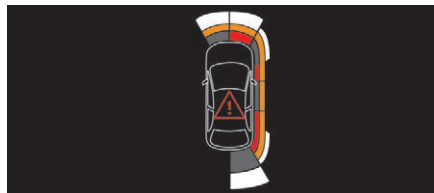
(white: more distant obstacles, orange: close obstacles, red: very close obstacles). When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h). The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

i The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle in relation to the vehicle – in the vehicle trajectory, in front or behind.

Side parking sensors



Using four additional sensors located on the sides of the front and rear bumpers, the system records the position of fixed obstacles during the manoeuvre and signals them when they are located by the sides of the vehicle.

! Only fixed obstacles are signalled correctly. Moving obstacles detected at the beginning of the manoeuvre may be signalled mistakenly, while moving obstacles which appear at the sides of the vehicle and which were not previously recorded will not be signalled.

Deactivation/Activation



The function is deactivated and activated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

The state of the function stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.



i The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations. In this case, the outline of a trailer is displayed at the rear of the image of the vehicle.

The parking sensors are deactivated during the space measurement phase of the Park Assist and Full Park Assist functions.

For more information on the **Park Assist** or the **Full Park Assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating limits

- Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
- Sounds such as those emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.) may interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.
- Accumulated snow or dead leaves on the road surface can interfere with the vehicle's sensors.

- A front or rear impact to the vehicle can distort the settings of the sensors, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be incorrect.
- The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is very loaded can affect the distance measurements.
- The sensors may be affected by poor weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall, etc.).

Maintenance recommendations

i In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

i **High pressure jet wash**
When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 12 inches (30 cm) away from the sensors.

Operating fault

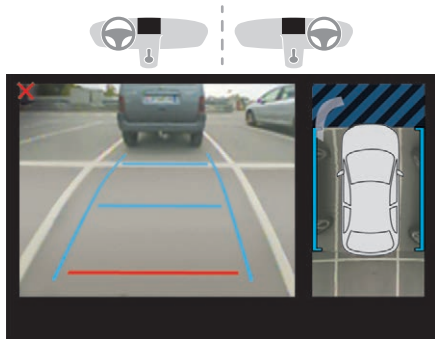


If a fault occurs when shifting to reverse, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal (short beep).

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Visiopark 1 – Visiopark 2

With the engine running, these systems allow views of your vehicle's close surroundings to be displayed on the touch screen using one camera for Visiopark 1 and two cameras for Visiopark 2.



The screen is divided into two parts: on the left, a contextual view; on the right, a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.

The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle. Different contextual views can be displayed in the left-hand part:

- standard view,
- 180° view,
- zoom view.

AUTO mode is activated by default.

In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom) according to the information from the parking sensors.

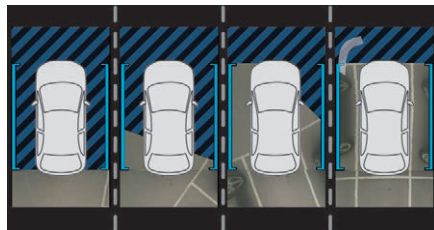
You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.

- ☞ Press the button in the bottom-left corner of the touch screen.
- ☞ Select the type of view:
 - "Standard view",
 - "180° view",
 - "Zoom view",
 - "AUTO view".

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected.

The state of the system is not memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Principle of operation



Using one or both cameras, the vehicle's close surroundings are recorded during manoeuvres at low speed.

An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is created in real time, as the vehicle manoeuvre progresses.

This representation facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen.

This image is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

With Visiopark 2, the image is created using both cameras, when going forward and when reversing.

When the function is activated, it is possible that the view from above is not displayed.

If the function is activated after the vehicle has already been driven, the view from above may be completely displayed.

! This system is a visual aid that cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

i The images provided by the camera(s) may be distorted by the relief. In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

Recommendations on care

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors and camera lenses are not covered with mud, ice or snow.

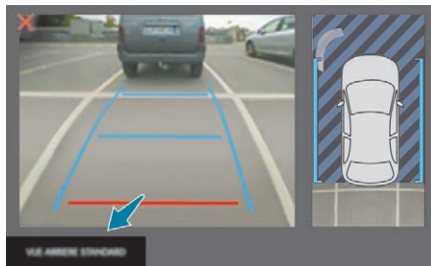
Check the cleanliness of the camera lenses regularly.

If necessary, clean the cameras with a soft, dry cloth.

When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the lance at least 30 cm away from the cameras and parking aid sensors.

Visiopark 1

Rear vision

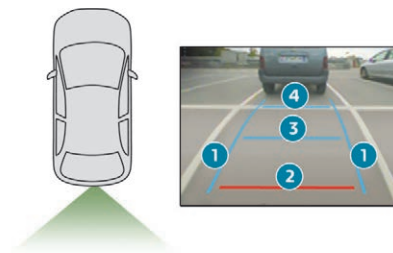


To activate the camera, located near the number plate lamps, engage reverse and keep the speed of the vehicle below 6 mph (10 km/h).

The system is deactivated:

- automatically above about 6 mph (10 km/h),
- automatically on opening the tailgate,
- when shifting out of reverse (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds),
- by pressing the red cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

Standard view



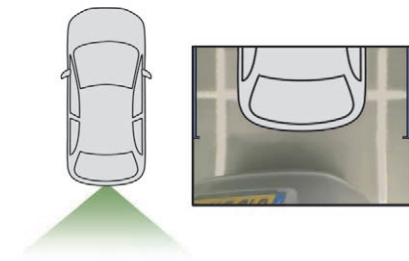
The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; the direction changes depending on the position of the steering wheel.

The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

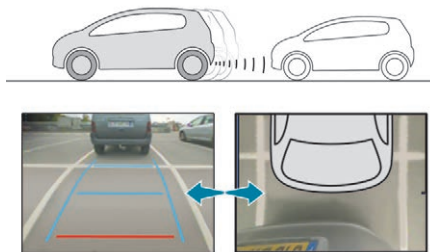
Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby. This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

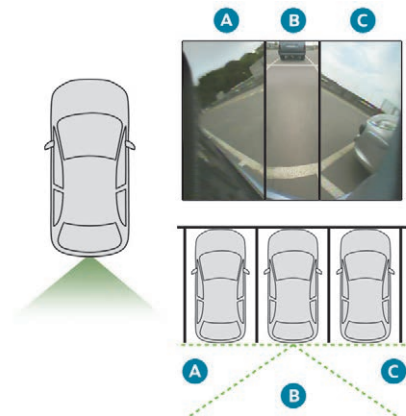
i Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are in reality. It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors. The rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default. Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from a rear view (standard) to a view from above (zoom), as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.

It consists of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.

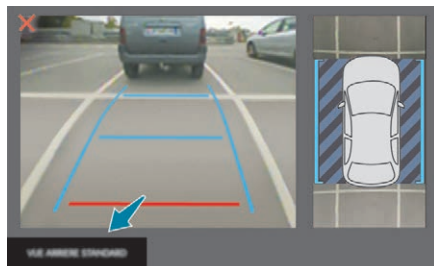
This view is available only from the view selection menu.

Visiopark 2

The vehicle has a camera at the front, fitted in the grille, and a camera at the rear, located close to the number plate lamps.

Using these cameras, the system displays the vehicle's near surroundings on the touch screen, offering views from the rear of the vehicle (rear vision), when reverse gear is engaged and views from the front of the vehicle (front vision), when the gearbox is in neutral or a gear is engaged.

Rear vision



The system activates automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

The system is deactivated:

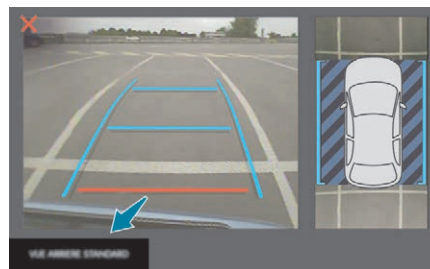
- automatically above about 6 mph (10 km/h),
- when shifting out of reverse (the rear view image is replaced by the front view image for 7 seconds),
- by pressing the red cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

i If a trailer or a bicycle carrier is fitted to the towball, the zone behind the vehicle on the view from above goes dark. The surroundings are reconstructed by the front camera only.

The rear vision views are similar to those for Visiopark 1.

For more information on **Visiopark 1**, refer to the corresponding section.

Front and rear vision



With the engine running and the speed below 12 mph (20 km/h), the system is activated via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen:

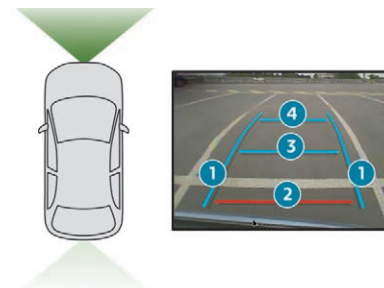
- ☞ Select "**Panoramic visual aid**".

AUTO mode is displayed by default, with front vision, if the gearbox is in neutral or with a gear engaged, or with rear vision, if reverse is engaged.

The system is deactivated:

- automatically above about 19 mph (30 km/h) (the image disappears temporarily from 12 mph (20 km/h)),
- by pressing the red cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

Standard view

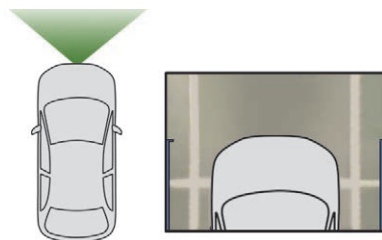


The area in front of your vehicle is displayed in the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes depending on the position of the steering wheel.

The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the front bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively. This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

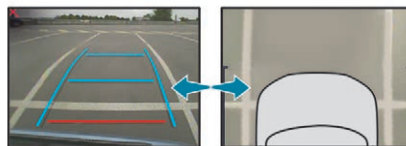
Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the front of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby. This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

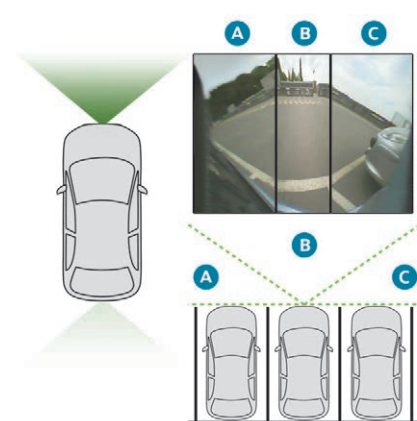
i Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are in reality. It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors. The front and rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default. Using sensors in the front bumper, the automatic view changes from the front view (standard) to the view from above (zoom) as an obstacle is approached during a manoeuvre.

180° view



The 180° view assists with exiting from a parking bay in forward gear, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.

This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.

It consists of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.

This view is available only from the view selection menu.

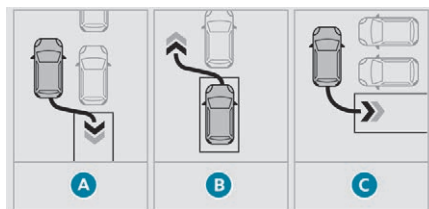
Park Assist

This system provides active parking assistance: it detects a parking space and then steers in the appropriate direction to park in this space while the driver controls the driving direction, engagement of gears, acceleration and braking.

To assist the driver in monitoring the correct manoeuvring operation, the system automatically triggers the display of Visiopark 1 or Visiopark 2 and the activation of the parking sensors.

! This system is a manoeuvring aid that cannot under any circumstances replace the vigilance of the driver. The driver must remain in control of their vehicle. He or she must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before undertaking a manoeuvre and ensure that the space remains clear during the entire manoeuvre.

The system performs the measurements of available parking spaces and calculations of distances to obstacles using ultrasonic sensors built in the front and rear bumpers of the vehicle.



The system assists with the following manoeuvres:

- A. Parking when entering a "parallel" parking space.
- B. Leaving a "parallel" parking space.
- C. Parking when entering a "bay" parking space.

Operation

- ☞ When approaching a parking area, reduce the speed of your vehicle to 19 mph (30 km/h) or less.

Function activation

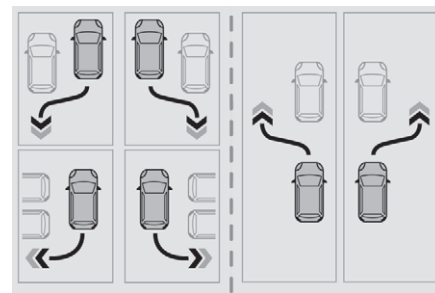


The function is activated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.
Select **"Park Assist"**

! Activating the function deactivates Blind Spot Detection.

i At any time, up to starting the entry or exit parking space manoeuvre, pressing the arrow located in the top left-hand corner of the display page deactivates the function.

Select type of manoeuvre



A manoeuvre selection page is displayed on the touch screen: by default, the "Entry" page if the vehicle has been running since the ignition was switched on, otherwise, the "Exit" page.

- ☞ Select the type and side of the manoeuvre to activate the parking space search. The selected manoeuvre can be changed at any time, even when searching for an available space.



The selection is accompanied by this indicator lamp coming on.

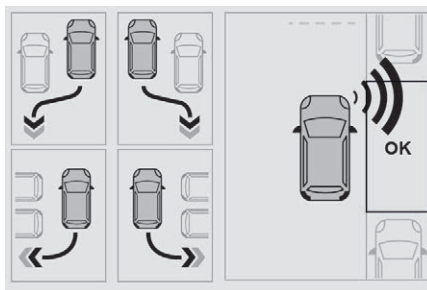
Parking space search

- You should drive at a distance of between 0.50 m and 1.50 m from the row of parked vehicles, without ever exceeding 19 mph (30 km/h), until the system finds an available space.

The parking space search stops over this limit. The function automatically deactivates once the vehicle speed exceeds 31 mph (50 km/h).

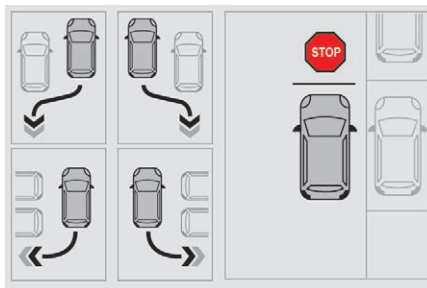
- For "parallel" parking, the space must at a minimum be equal to the length of your vehicle plus 0.60 m.
- For "bay" parking, the width of the space must be equal to the width of your vehicle plus 0.70 m.

- If the parking sensors function has been deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen, it will be automatically reactivated when the system is activated.



When the system finds an available space, "OK" is displayed on the parking view, accompanied by an audible signal.

Preparing for the manoeuvre



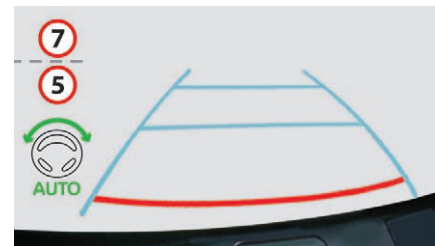
- Move very slowly until the request to stop the vehicle is displayed: "Stop the vehicle" and the "STOP" sign, accompanied by an audible signal.

Once the vehicle has stopped, an instructions page is displayed on the screen.

- To prepare for the manoeuvre, follow the instruction.



- This symbol is displayed to confirm that you have followed the instructions.



The start of the manoeuvre is indicated by the display of this page, with the message "Manoeuvre under way", accompanied by an audible signal.

Reversing is indicated by this message: "Release the steering wheel, reverse".

Visiopark 1 or Visiopark 2 and the parking sensors are automatically activated to help you monitor the close surrounding area of your vehicle during the manoeuvre.

During the manoeuvre

The system takes over the vehicle's steering. It gives instructions on the manoeuvring direction when starting the entry and exit parallel parking manoeuvres and for all entry manoeuvres for bay parking.

These instructions are displayed as a symbol accompanied by a message:



The manoeuvring status is indicated by these symbols:



Manoeuvre in progress (green).



Manoeuvre cancelled or finished (red) (the arrows indicate that the driver must take back control of the vehicle).

The maximum speed limit indications during the manoeuvres are signalled by these symbols:



5 mph or 7 km/h, for parking space entry.



3 mph or 5 km/h, for parking space exit.

! During a manoeuvre, the steering wheel turns quickly: do not hold the steering wheel, do not place your hand between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for anything likely to block the manoeuvre (loose and bulky clothing, scarves, ties, etc.) – Risks of injury! It is the driver's responsibility to monitor the state of the traffic continuously, especially vehicles coming towards you. The driver should check that no object or person can hinder the advance of the vehicle.

i The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen may be distorted by the relief.

In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

The manoeuvre can be interrupted definitively at any time, either by the driver or by the system automatically.

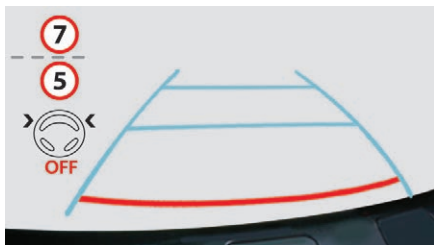
By the driver's action:

- taking over control of the steering,
- activating the direction indicator lamps on the opposite side to that of the manoeuvre,
- unfastening the driver's seat belt,
- switching off the ignition.

Interruption by the system:

- exceeding the speed limit: 5 mph or 7 km/h during the parking space entry manoeuvres and 3 mph or 5 km/h during the parking space exit manoeuvres,
- triggering of the anti-slip regulation on a slippery road,
- opening of a door or the boot,
- stalling of the engine,
- system malfunction,
- after 10 manoeuvres to enter or exit a parallel parking space and after 7 manoeuvres to enter a parking bay.

Interrupting the manoeuvre automatically deactivates the function.



The manoeuvre symbol is displayed in red, accompanied by the **"Manoeuvre cancelled"** message on the touch screen.

A message encourages the driver to take back control of the vehicle.



The function is deactivated after a few seconds, this indicator lamp goes off and the function returns to the initial display.

End of the parking space entry or exit manoeuvre

The vehicle stops as soon as the manoeuvre is completed.

The manoeuvring symbol is displayed in red accompanied by the **"Manoeuvre completed"** message on the touch screen.



Deactivation of the function is confirmed by this indicator lamp going off, accompanied by an audible signal.

If entering a parking space, the driver may be required to complete the manoeuvre.

Operating limits

- The system may suggest an inappropriate parking space (parking prohibited, work in progress with damaged road surface, location alongside a ditch, etc.).
- The system may indicate that a space was found but will not offer it because of a fixed obstacle on the opposite side of the manoeuvre which would not allow the vehicle to follow a trajectory required for parking.
- The system is not designed for performing the parking manoeuvre on a sharp curve.
- The system does not detect spaces that are much larger than the vehicle itself or that are delimited by obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs, etc.) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences, etc.).
- Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
- Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

- A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be falsified.
- If the boot is heavily loaded, the tilt of the vehicle towards the rear may interfere with the distance measurements.

The vehicle's sensors and camera(s) may be impaired by:

- accumulated snow or fallen leaves on the road,
- adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, falling snow),
- noise interference from noisy vehicles and machinery (lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.).

- !** Do not use the function under the following exterior conditions:
- Alongside a soft shoulder (ditch, etc.) or quay or on a cliff edge.
 - When the road surface is slippery (ice, etc.)

- !** Do not use the function in presence of one of the following malfunctions:
- Under-inflation of a tyre.
 - If one of the bumpers is damaged,
 - If one of the cameras is faulty.

! Do not use the function in presence of one of the following modifications:

- When carrying an object extending beyond the vehicle size (ladder on the roof bars, bicycle carrier on the tailgate, etc.).
- With a non-approved towball in place.
- With snow chains fitted.
- When driving on a small-diameter or "space-saver" type spare wheel.
- When the wheels fitted are a different size from the original ones.
- After modifying one or both bumpers (added protection, etc.).
- If the sensors have been repainted outside the PEUGEOT dealer network.
- With sensors not approved for your vehicle.

Maintenance recommendations

- Regularly check that the sensors and cameras are clean.
If necessary, clean the camera lenses with a soft, dry cloth.
- If using a high-pressure washer, do not direct the spray less than 30 cm from the sensors and cameras.
- In bad weather, or during the winter, ensure that the sensors and cameras are not covered with mud, ice or snow.

Operating faults



When the function is not activated, this indicator lamp temporarily flashing and an audible signal indicate a system fault.

If the fault occurs during the use of the system, the indicator lamp goes off.



If the fault in the parking sensors, indicated by this warning lamp coming on, occurs during use, it causes the function to deactivate.

In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

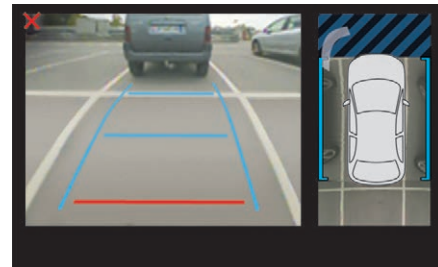


In the event of a fault with the power steering, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

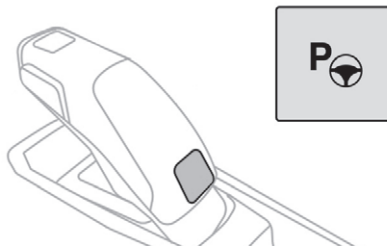
You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Full Park Assist

This system provides active assistance with parking: it detects a parking space then operates the vehicle to park it in this space, without intervention from the driver. Associated with the EAT8 automatic gearbox, the system manages control of the steering, direction, acceleration and braking.



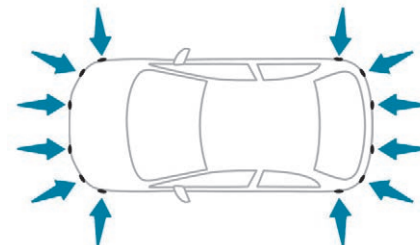
To assist the driver in monitoring the correct manoeuvring operation, the system automatically triggers the display of Visiopark 1 or Visiopark 2 and the activation of the parking sensors.



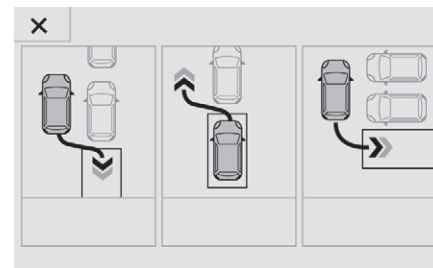
The driver must hold the function control button, located on the gear selector, down for the whole duration of the automatic manoeuvre.

i The driver's seat belt must be fastened and remain in place for the entire manoeuvre.

! Full Park Assist is a manoeuvring aid that cannot under any circumstances replace the vigilance of the driver. The manoeuvre remains the responsibility of the driver. Full Park Assist is not always able to react automatically and appropriately due to the performance limits of the sensors used. It is the driver's responsibility to stop the vehicle when necessary to ensure the safety of their immediate environment (particularly where there are pedestrians). The driver must remain in control of their vehicle. They must always check the area surrounding the vehicle before undertaking a manoeuvre. Throughout the entire manoeuvre, the driver must ensure the parking space remains free of obstruction. They must remain in the driving seat and must never try to lock the function control button. The driver can interrupt the manoeuvre at any time by pressing the brake pedal, by retaking control of the steering or by releasing the function control button.



The system performs the measurements of available parking spaces and calculations of distances to obstacles using 12 ultrasonic sensors built in the front and rear bumpers of the vehicle.



The Full Park Assist system provides assistance for the following manoeuvres:

- parking when entering and exiting a "parallel" parking space.
- parking when entering a "bay" parking space.

Operation

- When approaching a parking area, reduce the speed of your vehicle to a maximum of 19 mph (30 km/h).

Function activation

Activating the function can be done in two ways:



- Press this button, located on the gearbox selector.

or

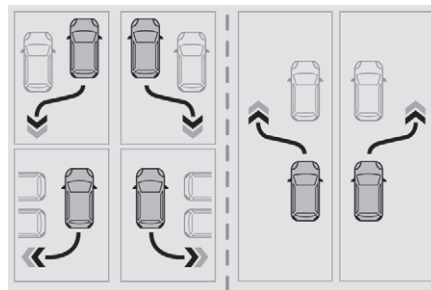


- Select "**Park Assist**" in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

! Activating the function deactivates Blind Spot Detection.

i At any time, up to starting the entry manoeuvre or leaving the parking space, pressing the red arrow located in the top left-hand corner of the display page deactivates the function.

Selecting the type of manoeuvre



A manoeuvre selection page is displayed on the touch screen: by default, the "**Entry**" page if the vehicle has been running since the ignition was switched on, otherwise, the "**Exit**" page.

- Select the type and side of the manoeuvre to activate the parking space search. The selected manoeuvre can be changed at any time, even when searching for an available space.



This indicator lamp comes on to confirm the selection.

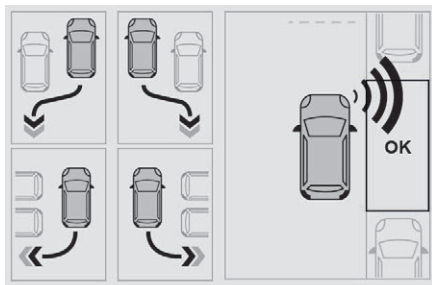
Parking space search

- You should drive at a distance of between 0.50 m and 1.50 m from the row of parked vehicles, without ever exceeding 19 mph (30 km/h), until the system finds an available space.

The parking space search stops over this limit. The function automatically deactivates as soon as the vehicle speed exceeds 31 mph (50 km/h).

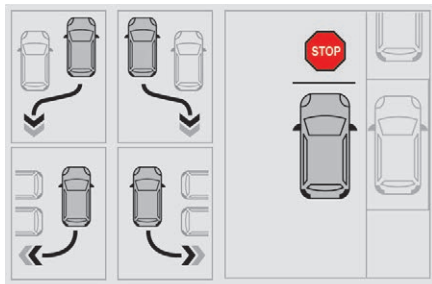
i For "parallel" parking, the space must at a minimum be equal to the length of your vehicle plus 1 m.
For "bay" parking, the width of the space must be equal to the width of your vehicle plus 0.70 m.

i If you have deactivated the parking sensors function, it will be automatically reactivated when activating Full Park Assist.



When the system finds an available space, "OK" is displayed on the parking view, accompanied by an audible signal.

Preparing for the manoeuvre



☞ Move very slowly until the request to stop the vehicle is displayed: **"Stop the vehicle"** and the **"STOP"** panel accompanied by an audible signal.

Once the vehicle has stopped, an instructions page is displayed on the screen.

☞ To prepare for the manoeuvre, you must apply all of these instructions.



This symbol will be automatically displayed when the instruction has been applied.

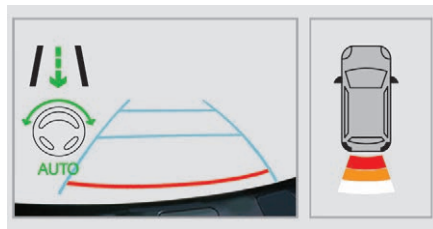
Once all the instructions have been validated, a new screen is displayed, indicating that you can undertake the manoeuvre.



☞ To undertake the manoeuvre, press this button.

☞ While holding the button down, gradually release the brake pedal.

! The button must be held down throughout the manoeuvre.



The start of the manoeuvre is indicated by the display of this screen, with the message **"Manoeuvre underway"**, accompanied by an audible signal.

Visiopark 1 or Visiopark 2 and the parking sensors are automatically activated to help you monitor the close surrounding area of your vehicle throughout the manoeuvre.

During the manoeuvre

As soon as the driver releases the brake pedal, the system automatically takes control of choosing the travel direction, forwards or reverse, acceleration, braking and the steering direction.

The manoeuvring status is indicated by these symbols:



Manoeuvre in progress



Manoeuvre interrupted



Manoeuvre completed or abandoned (white arrows indicate that the driver must take back control of their vehicle).

The direction of the manoeuvre is indicated by these symbols:



Forwards.



Reverse.

The central arrow is green whilst the vehicle is moving, or white to indicate the next manoeuvring direction.

Throughout the whole manoeuvre, indicated by a green **"AUTO"** symbol, the driver must hold the selector button down.

! During the manoeuvring stages, the steering wheel rotates rapidly: do not hold the steering wheel nor place your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for anything likely to block the manoeuvre (loose and bulky clothing, scarves, ties, etc.) – risk of injury! It is the driver's responsibility to monitor the state of the traffic continuously, especially vehicles coming towards you. The driver should check that no object or person might hinder the advance of the vehicle.

In some circumstances, the sensors may not detect small obstacles located in their blind spots.

The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen may be distorted by the relief.

In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

The driver must check the sides of the vehicle, using the mirrors.

! If the vehicle slows down significantly, the brake lamps may come on.

The manoeuvre can be interrupted temporarily at any time, either automatically by the system if an obstacle is detected, or by driver action. If the driver sees a hazard risk, they can also permanently interrupt the manoeuvre.

To suspend the manoeuvre, the driver can:

- release the function control button,
- press the brake pedal,
- resume control of the steering, or
- change the status of the gearbox (except changing to P).

Suspending the manoeuvre leads to the immediate immobilisation of the vehicle.



It is confirmed by the display of this symbol accompanied by the message **"Manoeuvre suspended"**.

- **Resuming the manoeuvre, after resolving the suspension conditions:**
 - release all controls (brake pedal, function control button, steering wheel, etc.)
 - press the function control button again.
- **Permanent interruption after suspending the manoeuvre:**
 - press the brake pedal and engage a gear.

The manoeuvre is abandoned in the following situations:

- no action from the driver during the 30 seconds following the manoeuvre being suspended,
- voluntary application of the parking brake,
- engagement of gearbox mode **P** by the driver,
- unfastening of the driver's seat belt,
- opening of a door or the boot,
- activation of the direction indicator lamps on the opposite side to that of the manoeuvre,
- in certain cases, when a wheel of the vehicle hits a pavement or a low obstacle,
- triggering of the anti-slip regulation (traction control) on a slippery road surface,
- stalling of the engine,

- sudden appearance in the field of the manoeuvre of an obstacle not detected by the system before the manoeuvre was started, with the obstacle remaining for more than 30 seconds,
- after ten manoeuvres to enter or exit a parallel parking space and after seven manoeuvres to enter a bay parking space,
- system malfunction during the manoeuvre.

Abandoning the manoeuvre immediately triggers the vehicle's brakes and automatically deactivates the function.



This symbol is displayed on the touch screen, accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre abandoned**".

A message encourages the driver to take back control of their vehicle.



The function is deactivated after a few seconds, this indicator lamp goes off and the initial display is resumed.

The system automatically engages mode **P** of the gearbox after 4 seconds.

End of the manoeuvre to enter or exit a parking space

The vehicle stops as soon as the manoeuvre is completed.



This symbol is displayed on the touch screen, accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre completed**".



The function is deactivated after a few seconds, this indicator lamp goes off and the initial display is resumed.

- If entering a parking space, the driver may be required to complete the manoeuvre. The gearbox changes to **P** 4 seconds after completion of the manoeuvre.
- In the case of a parking space exit manoeuvre, the gearbox changes to **N**. With a message and symbols, the driver is encouraged to resume control of their vehicle: take hold of the steering wheel, engage mode **D** or **R** of the gearbox and accelerate when traffic conditions allow. After a delay of 30 seconds with no action from the driver, the gearbox automatically changes to mode **P**.

Operating limits

- The system may suggest an inappropriate parking space (parking prohibited, work in progress with damaged road surface, location alongside a ditch, etc.).
- The system may indicate that a space was found but will not offer it because of a fixed obstacle on the opposite side of the manoeuvre which does not allow the vehicle to follow a trajectory required for the parking.
- The system is not designed for performing the parking manoeuvre on a steep slope or on a sharp curve.
- The system does not detect spaces that are much larger than the vehicle itself or that are delimited by obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs, etc.) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences, etc.).
- Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
- Sounds such as those emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.) can interfere with the vehicles' sensors.
- Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.
- Accumulated snow or dead leaves on the road surface can interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- The system can be disrupted by faulty inflation of the vehicle's tyres.

- A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which may not always be detected by the system: distance measurements may be falsified.
- The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is very loaded can affect the distance measurements.
- The sensors and camera or cameras can be disrupted by adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, falling snow).
- The Visiopark 1 or Visiopark 2 display is a manoeuvring aid that does not replace the vigilance of the driver.

- !** Do not use the function under the following exterior conditions:
- Alongside a soft shoulder (ditch, etc.) or quay or on a cliff edge.
 - When the road surface is slippery (ice, etc.).

! Do not use the function in presence of one of the following malfunctions:

- Under-inflation of a tyre.
- If one of the bumpers is damaged.
- If one of the cameras is faulty.
- If the brake lamps are not working.

! Do not use the function in presence of one of the following modifications:

- When carrying an object extending beyond the vehicle size (ladder on the roof bars, bicycle carrier on the tailgate, etc.).
- With a non-approved towball in place.
- With snow chains fitted.
- When driving on a small-diameter or "space-saver" type spare wheel.
- When the wheels fitted are a different size from the original ones.
- After modifying one or both bumpers (added protection, etc.).
- If the sensors have been repainted outside the dealer network.
- With sensors not approved for your vehicle.

Operating faults



When the function is not activated, this indicator lamp temporarily flashing and an audible signal indicate a Full Park Assist fault. If the fault occurs during the use of the system, the indicator lamp goes off.



If the fault in the parking sensors, indicated by this warning lamp coming on, occurs during Full Park Assist use, it causes the function to deactivate.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



In the event of a fault with the power steering, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message. You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



PEUGEOT & TOTAL

A PARTNERSHIP FOR PERFORMANCE!

The PEUGEOT TOTAL team knows how to push back the limits of performance to win victories in the most difficult conditions, as confirmed by the first three places achieved in 2017. To obtain these exceptional results, the PEUGEOT Sport teams chose TOTAL QUARTZ for the PEUGEOT 3008 DKR, a high-tech lubricant that protects the engine in the most severe conditions.

TOTAL QUARTZ protects your engine against the effects of time.

TOTAL QUARTZ Ineo First is a high performance lubricant, the result of work done together by PEUGEOT and TOTAL R&D. Specially formulated for the engines in PEUGEOT vehicles, its innovative technology significantly reduces CO₂ emissions and keeps your engine clean.

PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS **TOTAL**



OFFICIAL PARTNERS

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:

E5 Petrol that meets standard EN228, mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN15376.

E10

i The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:

B7 Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

E5

E10

B7

B10

XTL

B20

B30

B10 Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

XTL Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20 B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 can be used in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

B30

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could result in an abnormal operation of the fuel supply circuit. To avoid this, we recommend using winter-type Diesel fuel and keeping the fuel tank more than 50% full. If, despite this, at temperatures below -15°C (+5°F) the engine has problems starting, just leave the vehicle in a garage or heated workshop for a little while.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For any additional information, contact a dealer.

Refuelling

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 62 litres (Petrol) or 55 litres (Diesel).

Reserve level: 6 litres.

Low fuel level



When the low fluid level is reached in the tank, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, **about 6 litres** of fuel is left in the tank.

Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards "0". Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

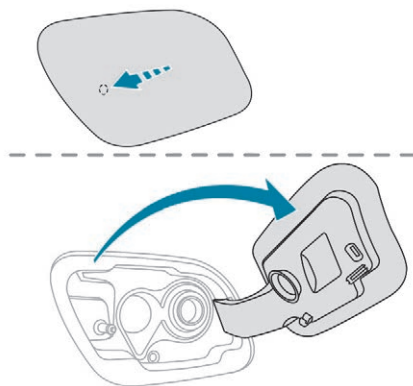
For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

Refilling

A self-adhesive label on the inner face of the filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to use, depending on your engine.

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge. Opening the filler flap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.



To refuel in complete safety:

- ☞ **You must switch off the engine.**
- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked, press the rear edge of the flap to open it (the filler cap is a part of it).

- ☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct type of fuel for your vehicle.
- ☞ Insert the nozzle so as to push in the metal non-return flap.
- ☞ Make sure that the nozzle is pushed in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
- ☞ Hold it in this position throughout the filling operation.
- ☞ Push the filler flap to close it.

If you are filling your tank to the top, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle; this could cause malfunctions.

Your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.

The filler neck is narrower, allowing only unleaded petrol nozzles to be introduced.

! If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

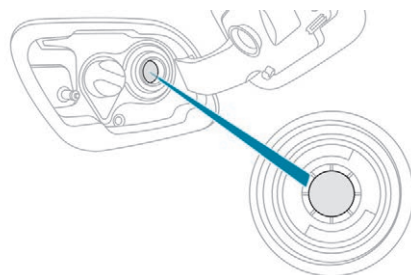
Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on the country of sale.)

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into your Diesel tank, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

i It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.

In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

i Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.

Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the PEUGEOT dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

Towing device

Load distribution

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towed load must be reduced by 10% for every 1,000 metres of altitude.

i Use towing devices and their genuine harnesses approved by PEUGEOT. It is recommended that the installation be performed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the towing device is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Important: for versions equipped with the hands-free tailgate, if a towing device is installed outside of the PEUGEOT dealer network, it is essential to visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the detection system: risk of hands-free function malfunction! Certain driving assistance or manoeuvring assistance functions are automatically disabled if an approved towing device is used.

! Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label as well as in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).

! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

! Vehicle equipped with motorised tailgate with hands-free function

To avoid unwanted opening of the tailgate when using the towing device:

- please deactivate this function in advance in your vehicle's configuration menu,
- or remove the electronic key from the recognition zone, with the tailgate closed.

Towing device with retractable towball

When this towing device is not in use, it is folded away underneath the rear bumper. No tools are required to install or stow it.

! Before any operation, the vehicle must be stationary with the parking brake applied. The area close to the exhaust pipe may reach a high temperature: risk of burns!

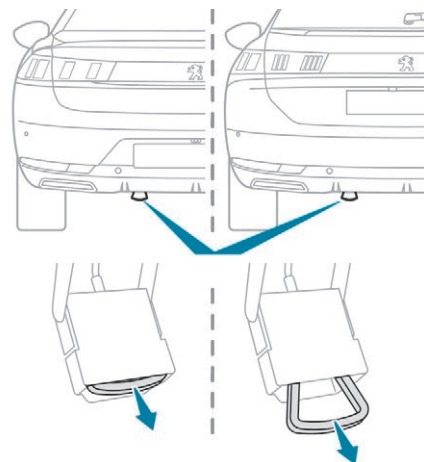
! Vehicle equipped with motorised tailgate with hands-free function

To avoid unwanted opening of the tailgate, follow the recommendations on the **Towing device** by referring to the corresponding section.

Unlocking handle

The towball is locked in either the stowed position or the use position. The unlocking handle is behind the rear bumper, protected by a storage case.

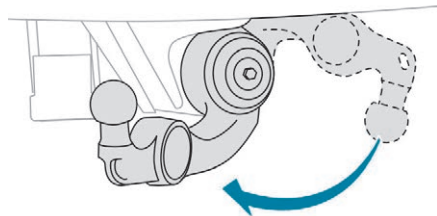
To reach the handle:



- ☞ Pass your hand flat under the rear bumper with the palm facing upwards.
- ☞ Insert your hand into the storage case and grasp the handle.

To unlock the towball:

- ☞ Pull the handle firmly downwards to release it.

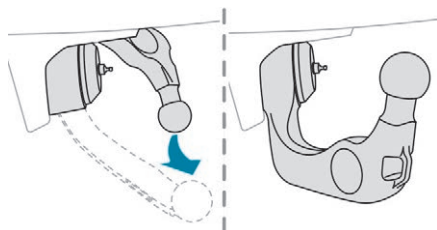


The towball hangs, hooked onto its axis.

As soon as you release the handle, it is engaged automatically in its storage case.

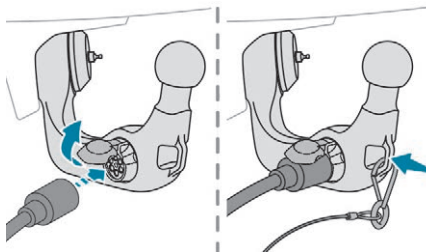
Use position:

Towball unlocked:



- ☞ Grasp the towball and rotate it by raising it until it locks into place vertically.

! The towball must be folded away without fail when using a high-pressure washer. Do not direct the lance less than 30 cm from the towing device.

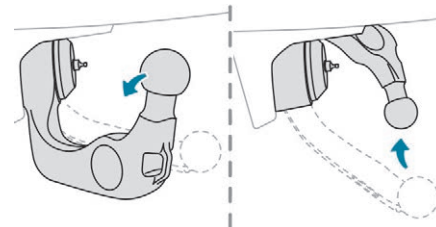


- ☞ Raise the electrical socket cover and connect the plug for the trailer or carrying device.
- ☞ Attach the safety cable of the trailer to the eye fitted in the towball elbow.

Storage position

! When the towing system is not in use, it is recommended to fold the towball away. In the event of a rear-end collision, damage to the vehicle could be worse due to the towball.

Towball unlocked and plug disconnected:



- ☞ Grasp the towball and turn it until it locks into place horizontally.

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for any work on this towing system.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as air conditioning, heated rear screen, etc.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

Switching to this mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

i If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

Exiting the mode

These functions will be automatically restored the next time the vehicle is used.

In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,
- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient. Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Snow chains



In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size
215/60 R16	9 mm
215/55 R17	9 mm
235/45 R18	cannot be fitted with chains (with standard chains)
235/40 R19	cannot be fitted with chains (with standard chains)

For more information on snow chains, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

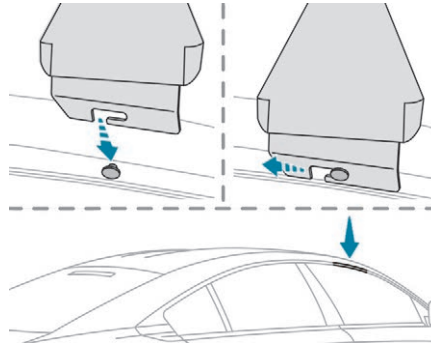
i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

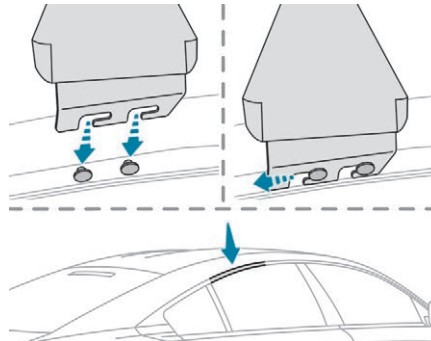
Fitting roof bars

! As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle. You must see a PEUGEOT dealer to obtain these roof bars and their specific fixings. Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

Direct installation on the roof (Hatchback)



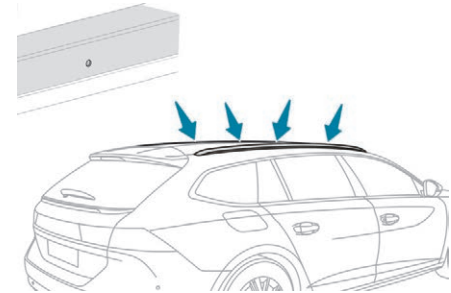
At the front



At the rear

You must only attach the transverse bars to the four fixing points located in the roof frame. These points are concealed by the door seals; raise the seal to access the fixing point. The roof bar fixings include a lug to be fitted in the pin of each fixing point.

Fitting on longitudinal bars (SW)



The transverse bars must be fixed at the engraved markings on the longitudinal bars.

- Maximum authorised load distributed over the transverse roof bars, for a load height not exceeding 40 cm (with the exception of bicycle carriers):

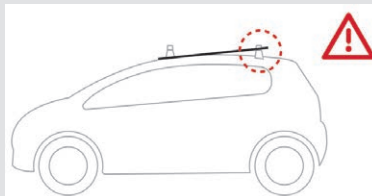
- Hatchback: **65 kg**.
- SW: **80 kg**.

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the vehicle's fixing points. For transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle, refer to local legislation.

Recommendations

Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides. Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof. Secure the load firmly. Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected. Regularly check the correct locking of the roof bars, at least before each trip. Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed. If you use a roof box, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the compatible fixing parts.

Sunroof



Do not operate the sunroof when using roof bars – risk of major damage!

Bicycle/Accessory Carrier

- Do not fit an accessory carrier to the tailgate.

Bonnet

For more information about the **Active bonnet**, refer to the corresponding section.



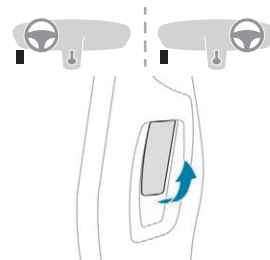
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

- The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet when the left-hand front door is shut.

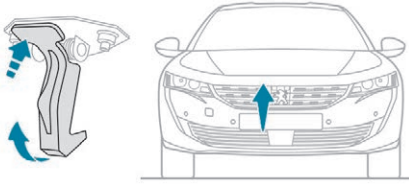
- When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch with care (risk of burns), using the protected area. When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch. Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

- The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

Opening



- From inside:** pull the release lever, located on the left below the dashboard, towards you.



☞ **From the outside:** lift the safety catch and raise the bonnet.

Two bonnet struts open the bonnet and hold it open.

Closing

- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
- ☞ Check that it is latched correctly.

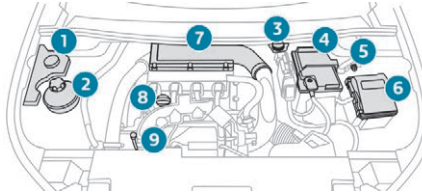
! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Engine compartment

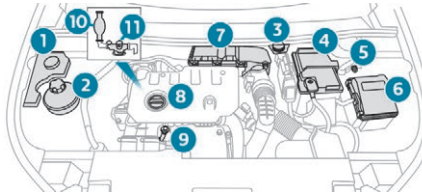
These engines are examples provided as a guide. The locations of the following elements may vary:

- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.
- Priming pump.
- Degassing screw.

Petrol engine



Diesel engine



1. Screenwash fluid tank.
2. Engine coolant reservoir.
3. Brake fluid tank.
4. Battery/Fuses.
5. Remote earth point (-).
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.
10. Priming pump*.
11. Degassing screw*.

* Depending on engine.

! The Diesel fuel system operates under very high pressure. All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The fluid must comply with the manufacturer's recommendations and with the vehicle's engine.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

♻️ Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop and dispose of in the containers reserved for this purpose.

Engine oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge, or using the dipstick.

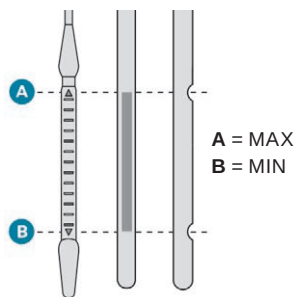
i To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine stopped for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to access the filler opening.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

i After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Coolant level



Check the coolant level regularly. It is normal to top up the fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.

The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid the risk of scalding when you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

Screenwash fluid level



Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The screenwash fluid must be topped up with a ready for use mix.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid with antifreeze must be used that is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to preserve the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, etc.).

Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive level (Diesel with particle filter)



The additive reservoir low level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

Topping up

The reservoir must be topped up without delay by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Level of AdBlue

An alert is triggered once the reserve level is reached.

For more information on the **Indicators** for the AdBlue range, refer to the corresponding section.

To avoid the vehicle being immobilised as per regulations, you must top up the AdBlue tank.

For more information on **AdBlue (BlueHDI engines)**, and in particular on topping up the tank, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

i For more information on the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Passenger compartment filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often, if necessary.**

i A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Air filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often, if necessary.**

Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)



The start of saturation of the particle filter is signalled by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by a message warning of the risk of the filter clogging up.

i As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off. If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level. For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

i On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc/drum wear



For any information on checking brake disc wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any specific check. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Wheels and tyres



The pressure must be checked on all tyres, including the spare wheel, when the tyres are "cold", at least once a month and before a long journey.

The pressures given on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 31 mph (50 km/h), 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the values given on the label.
Under-inflation increases fuel consumption.
Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding – Risk of an accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces braking efficiency and control of the vehicle's steering. Regular inspections of the condition of tyres (tread and sides) and rims are recommended as well as making sure that valves are fitted.

Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance and the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

! Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.
After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

Advice on care and maintenance

Recommendations on the care and maintenance of your vehicle are given in the Warranty and Maintenance Record.

Headlamps and lamps

- ! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating. Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products. Use a sponge and soapy water. The use of a high pressure jet wash for cleaning the headlamps, lamps and their surrounds may damage the lacquer and seals. Observe the recommendations on pressure and distance for jet washing. First clean persistent stains with a sponge and warm soapy water.

Leather

Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care and cleaning is essential for its durability.

- i Refer to your vehicle's Warranty and Maintenance Record for information on all the special precautions to observe.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of its Diesel engines, PEUGEOT has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a fluid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in a **special tank** holding about 17 litres.

An alert system is triggered automatically once the reserve level is reached: you can then drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty.

- ! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine. If the SCR system is defective, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting. In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 685 miles (1,100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting. In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

- i For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and associated alerts, refer to the corresponding section.

i Freezing of the AdBlue®
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

i It is recommended that the AdBlue® is topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

- !** In order to ensure that the SCR system operates correctly:
- Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
 - Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.
 - Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i You can also visit a service station equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles.

! Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. Containers should be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.

If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

! Never store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This fluid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (stored in a cool place).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In

the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water. In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapour has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.

Procedure

Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

In winter, check that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. If not, due to freezing, the AdBlue® cannot be poured into the tank. Park your vehicle somewhere warmer for a few hours before topping up.

! In the event of an AdBlue® breakdown, confirmed by the message "Add AdBlue: Starting impossible", you must top up with at least 5 litres.

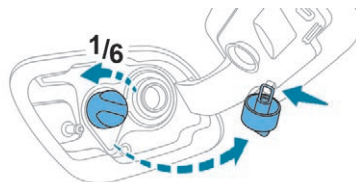
! Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the side of the body, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after an AdBlue breakdown**, you must wait about five minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle or bringing the electronic key into the passenger compartment.**

Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

☞ With Keyless Entry and Starting, press the "START/STOP" button to switch off the engine.



☞ With the vehicle unlocked and the fuel filler flap open, turn the blue cap of the AdBlue® tank 1/6 of a turn anti-clockwise.

☞ Release the blue cap.

☞ Obtain an AdBlue® container. After first checking the use-by date, read the instructions on the label carefully before pouring the contents of the container into your vehicle's AdBlue tank.

Or

☞ Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle and refill the tank until the nozzle stops automatically.

! Important:

- To avoid overflowing the AdBlue® tank, it is recommended:
 - To top up between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.
- Or
 - That you stop after the nozzle's first automatic cut-out if you are refilling at a service station.
- If your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine – you must add at least 5 litres.

After refilling

- ☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank filler and turn it 1/6 of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
- ☞ Close the fuel filler flap.



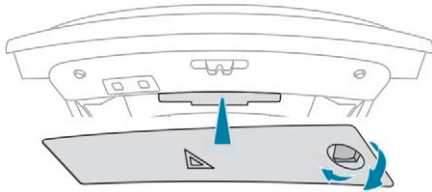
Do not dispose of AdBlue® containers in the household waste.

Place them in a suitable container or take them to your dealer.

Warning triangle

As a safety precaution, before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

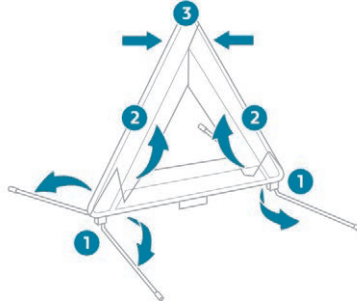
Storage compartment



There is a compartment in the interior trim of the tailgate to store a triangle.

- ☞ Open the tailgate.
- ☞ Release the cover by turning the screw a quarter turn anti-clockwise.

Assembling the triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment:

- ☞ Remove the triangle from its case,
- ☞ Unfold the legs,
- ☞ Open out the two sides of the triangle,
- ☞ Clip them together to complete the assembly.

i For other versions, refer to the instructions provided with the triangle.

Positioning the triangle

- ☞ Place the triangle behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel. If the engine does not start first time, do not keep trying, but start the procedure again from the beginning.

i For more information on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

BlueHDi engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.

If the engine does not start, repeat the procedure.

HDi engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.

- 🔧 Loosen the degassing bolt.
- 🔧 Operate the priming pump until fuel appears in the transparent tube.
- 🔧 Retighten the degassing bolt.
- 🔧 Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- 🔧 If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- 🔧 Put the cover back in place, clip it and ensure it is clipped in.
- 🔧 Close the bonnet.

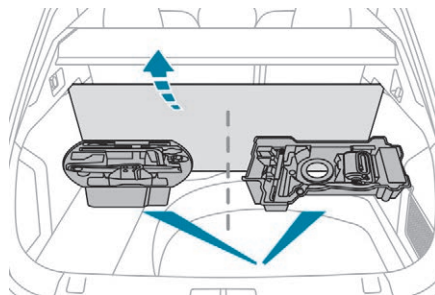
Tool kit

This is a set of tools provided with the vehicle. Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:

- temporary puncture repair kit,
- spare wheel.

Access to the tools

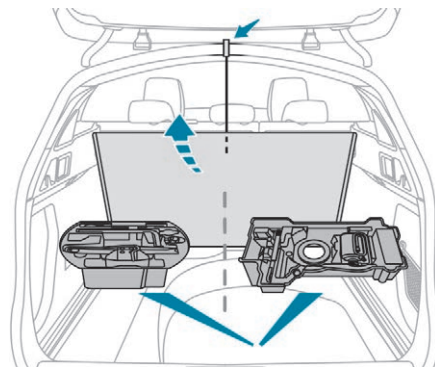
The main tools are stowed in the boot under the floor.



Hatchback

For access to them:

- 🔧 open the boot,
- 🔧 lift the floor and fold it on itself.



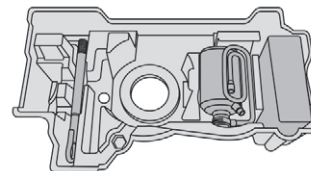
SW

For access to them:

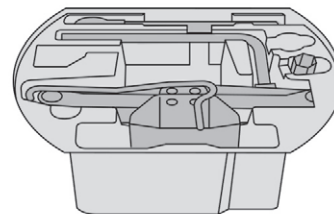
- 🔧 open the boot,

- 🔧 raise the floor,
- 🔧 hang the floor hook at the upper boot seal.

Versions with a temporary puncture repair kit



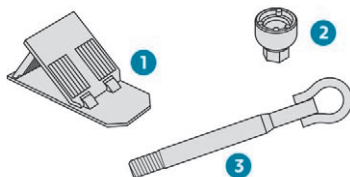
Versions with a spare wheel



! All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary depending on equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre. Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle. If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it. The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE. The jack does not require any maintenance.

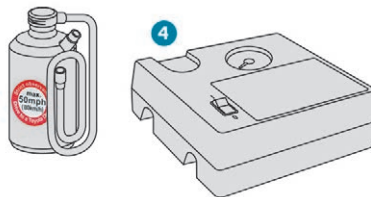
List of tools



1. Chock to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment).
2. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment).
For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
3. Removable towing eye.

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

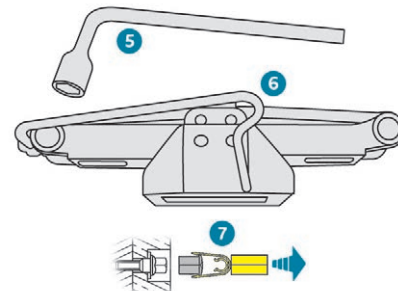
With temporary puncture repair kit



4. Temporary puncture repair kit. Contains a 12 V compressor and a cartridge of sealant to temporarily repair the wheel and adjust the tyre pressure, as well as a speed limit sticker.

For more information on the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace.
For removing the wheel trim and removing the wheel bolts.
6. Jack with integrated handle.
Used to raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cover remover (depending on equipment).
For removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

Temporary puncture repair kit

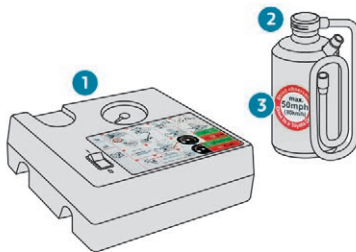
i Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

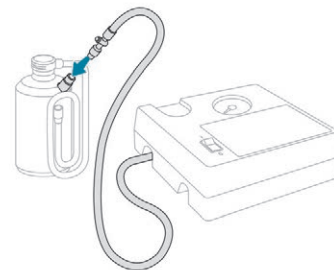
It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

i The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

Composition of the kit



1. 12 V compressor, with integral pressure gauge.
2. Sealant cartridge bottle, with integral hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

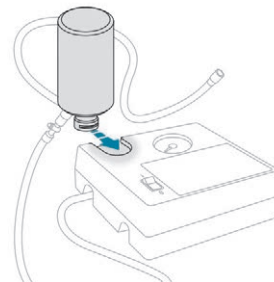


☞ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.

! Do not remove any foreign bodies (e.g. nail, screw, etc.) which have penetrated into the tyre.

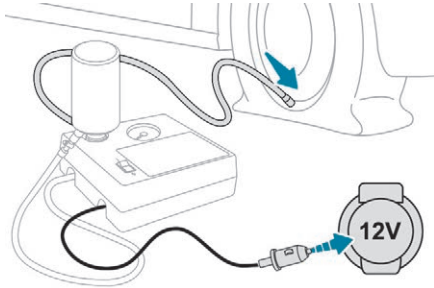
Repair procedure

- ☞ Park the vehicle without obstructing the traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



☞ Turn the sealant bottle over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.

- Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



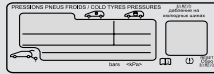
- Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is at position "O".
- Fully uncoil the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

! Only the 12 V sockets located at the **front** of the vehicle and **in the boot** can be used to **power the compressor**. The 12 V socket located at the back of the centre console is not suitable for this purpose.



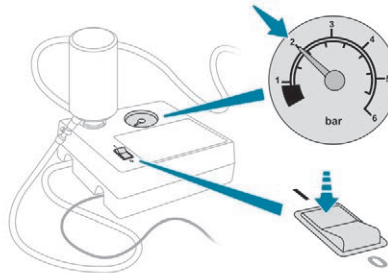
- Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind the driver that a wheel is in temporary use.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

- Switch on the ignition.



- Start the compressor by turning the switch to position "I" until the pressure of the tyre reaches 2 bars. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

! If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after about 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- Turn the switch to position "O".
- Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Replace the cap on the valve.
- Remove the kit.
- Remove and then store the bottle of sealant.

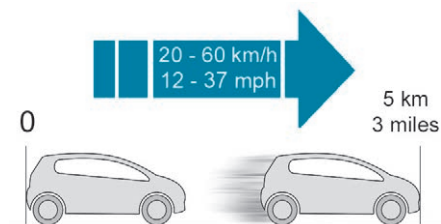
! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.

Keep this product out of the reach of children.

The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.

After use, do not discard the bottle in standard waste, take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.

Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



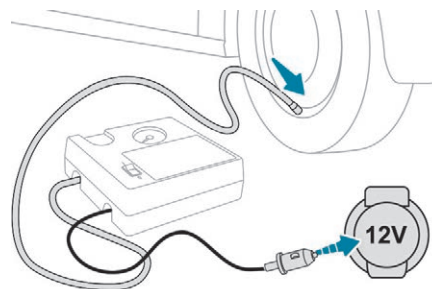
- ☞ Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- ☞ Stop to check the repair and **measure the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! Do not exceed the speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

i You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.

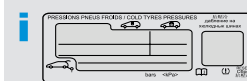


- ☞ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.

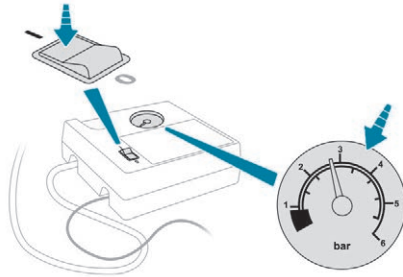
- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is in the "O" position.
- ☞ Fully uncoil the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.

! Only the 12 V sockets located at the **front** of the vehicle and **in the boot** can be used to **power the compressor**.

The 12 V socket located at the back of the centre console is not suitable for this purpose.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



- ☞ Start the compressor by placing the switch in the "I" position and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

! If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in the "O" position.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

! Do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km) with a repaired tyre; see a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to change the tyre.

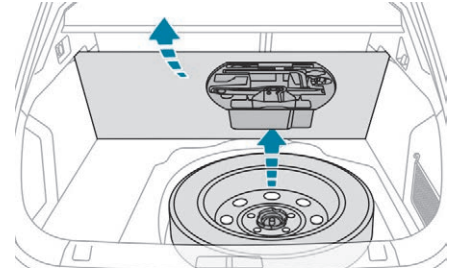
! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system. For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

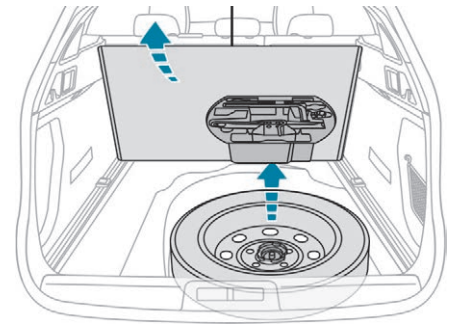
i Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Procedure for changing a damaged wheel with the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the spare wheel



Hatchback



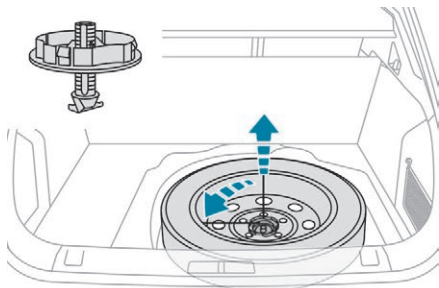
SW

The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.

For access to the spare wheel, first refer to section on the **Toolkit**.

- i** The spare wheel is of the "space-saver" type.

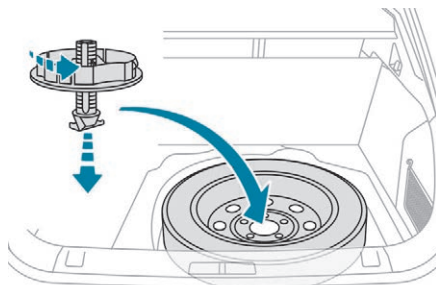
Removing the spare wheel



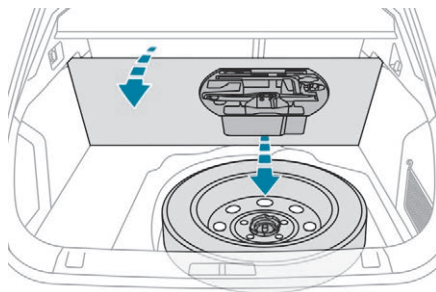
- ☞ Slacken the central nut.
- ☞ Remove the fixing device (nut and bolt).
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards the back of the boot.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.

Putting the spare wheel back in place

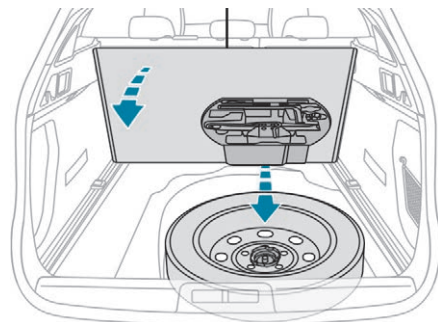
- !** The punctured wheel cannot be placed in the boot under the floor.



- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ☞ Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
- ☞ Position the fixing device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.



Hatchback



SW

- ☞ Tighten the central nut sufficiently to retain the wheel correctly.
- ☞ Return the tool box to the middle of the wheel and clip it in place.

Removing a wheel

i Wheel with wheel trim

When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.

When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.

! Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.

Apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed to be in automatic mode; switch off the ignition and with a manual gearbox, engage first gear so as to lock the wheels.

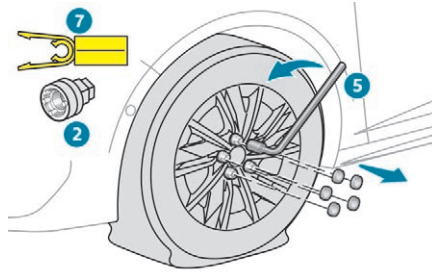
Apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed to be in automatic mode; switch off the ignition and with an automatic gearbox, select mode **P** so as to lock the wheels.

Check that the parking brake warning lamps in the instrument panel are on fixed.

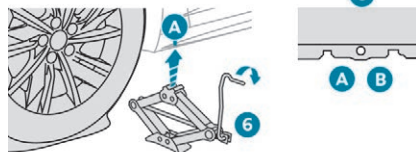
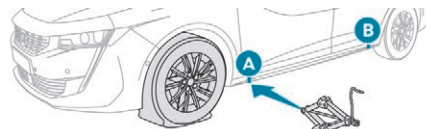
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

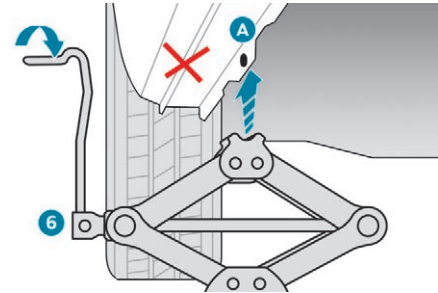
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.



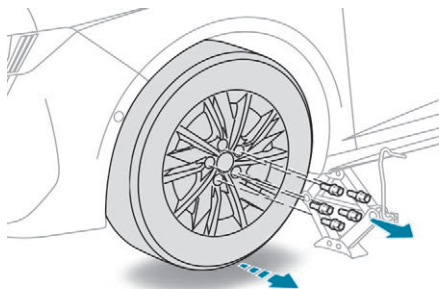
- ☞ To remove the wheel bolt cover on each of the bolts, use tool **7** (alloy wheels).
- ☞ Fit security socket **2** on wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt.
- ☞ Slacken the other bolts using wheelbrace **5** only.



- ☞ Place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



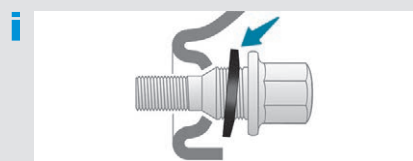
- ☞ Extend jack **6** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**; contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



- ☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- ☞ Remove the wheel.

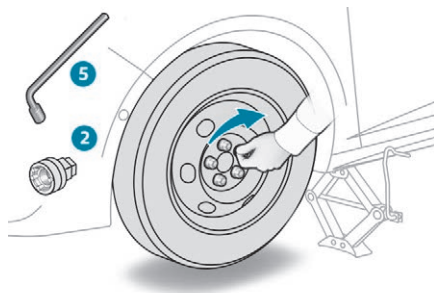
! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop – risk of injury!
Position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points, **A** or **B**, under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area on the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack collapsing – risk of injury!

Fitting a wheel



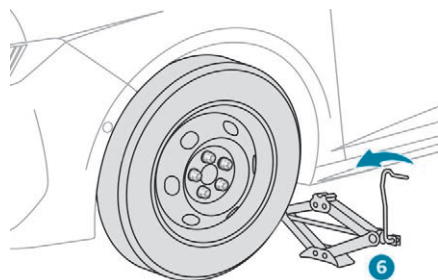
Fitting a steel or "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

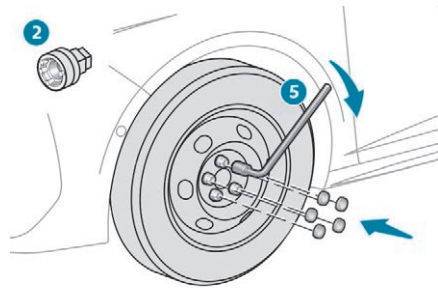


- ☞ Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.

- ☞ Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** fitted with security socket **2**.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace **5** only.



- ☞ Lower the vehicle again fully.
- ☞ Fold jack **6** and detach it.



- ☞ Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** fitted with security socket **2**.

- ☞ Tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace 5 only.
- ☞ Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Store the tools.

After changing a wheel

! With a "space-saver" type spare wheel



The following is recommended:

- deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control, etc.), as indicated on the label attached to the wheel,
- do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).

! Driving with more than one "space-saver" type spare wheel is prohibited.

! Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tightness of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked.

Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Changing a bulb

! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

! Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the lamp has been switched off for several minutes – Risk of serious burns!

- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.

Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

! Light-emitting diodes (LED)

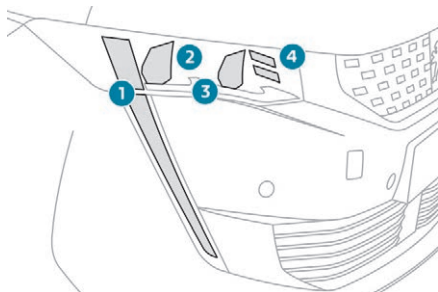
For the replacement of this type of bulb, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Halogen bulbs

To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

Front lamps

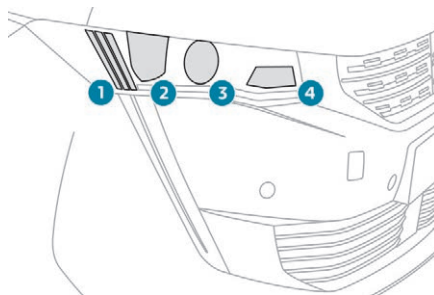
Model with "Full LED" technology headlamps



1. Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps/ Direction indicators (LED).
2. Dipped beam headlamps (LED).
3. Main beam headlamps (LED).
4. Static cornering lamps (LED).

! Do not touch the "Full LED" technology headlamps. Risk of electrocution!
Call a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Model with halogen headlamps



1. Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps (LED).
2. Main beam headlamps (H7).
3. Dipped beam headlamps (H7).
4. Direction indicators (PWY24W).

! Opening of bonnet/Access to bulbs

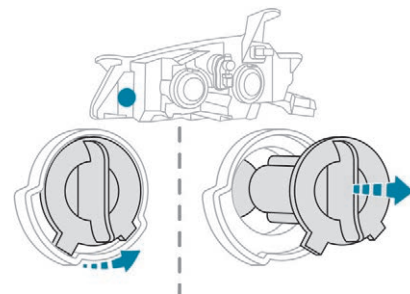
If the engine is warm, proceed with caution – Risk of burns!
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the engine fan – Risk of strangulation!

! After changing a bulb

When refitting, close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the sealing of the lamp.

Direction indicators (model with halogen headlamps)

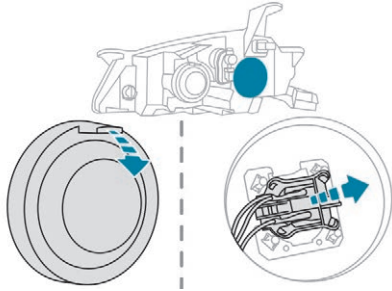
i Rapid flashing of the direction indicator lamp (left or right) in the instrument panel indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.



- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and pull it out.
- ☞ Turn the bulb a quarter turn and replace it. To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

i Amber coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced by bulbs with identical colour and specifications.

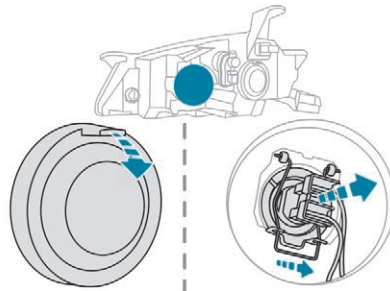
Main beam headlamps (model with halogen headlamps)



- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Pull the connector rearwards to disconnect it.
- ☞ Pull the bulb rearwards to extract it.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

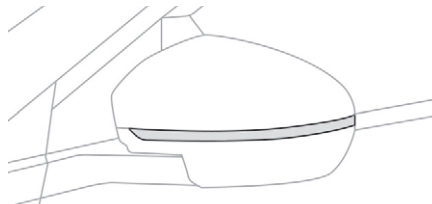
Dipped beam headlamps (model with halogen headlamps)



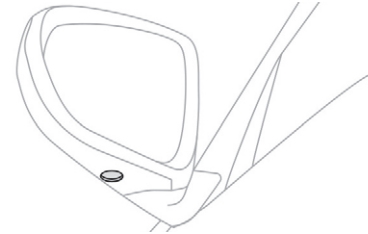
- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Pull the connector rearwards to disconnect it.
- ☞ Push the spring forwards then to the right to release the bulb.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Direction indicator side repeaters (LED)

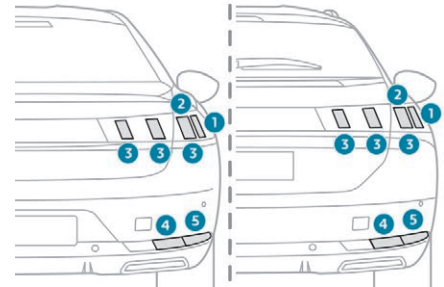


Door mirror spotlamps (LED)



Rear lamps

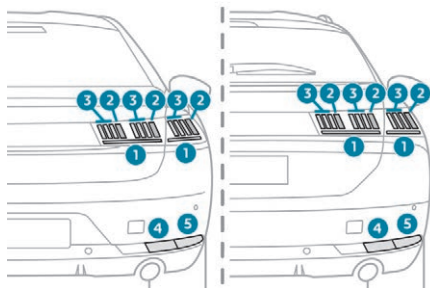
Model with LED lamps



1. Direction indicators (LED).
2. Brake lamps (LED).
3. Sidelamps/Daytime running lamps (LED).
4. Reversing lamps (P21W).
5. Foglamps (P21W).

LED: light-emitting diodes.

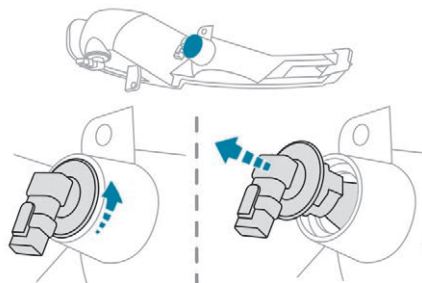
Model with 3D Full LED adaptive lamps



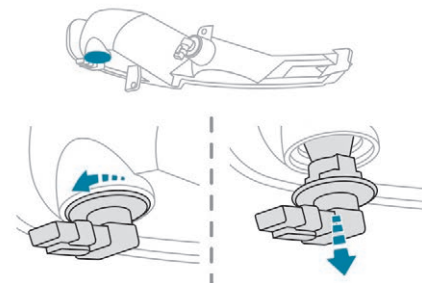
1. Direction indicators (LED).
2. Brake lamps (LED).
3. Sidelamps/Daytime running lamps (LED).
4. Reversing lamps (P21W).
5. Foglamps (P21W).

LED: light-emitting diodes.

Reversing lamps/foglamps



Reversing lamps



Foglamps

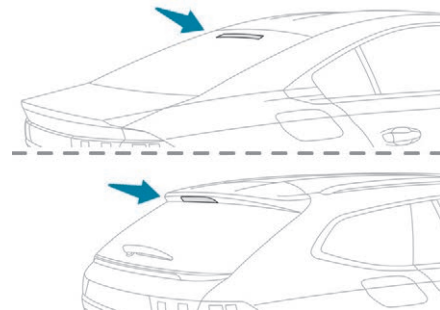
These bulbs are replaced from outside the rear bumper:

- ☞ pass your hand under the bumper,
- ☞ turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and remove it,
- ☞ turn the bulb a quarter turn and replace it.

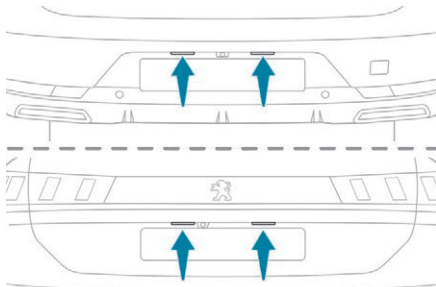
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! If changing a bulb within a few minutes of switching off the ignition, take care not to touch the exhaust – risk of burns!

Third brake lamp (LED)



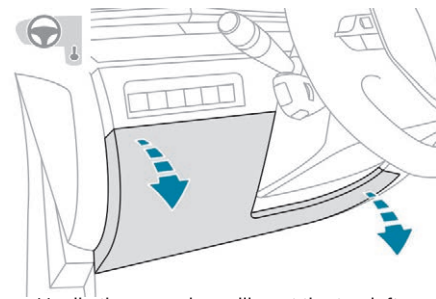
Number plate lamps (LED)



Changing a fuse

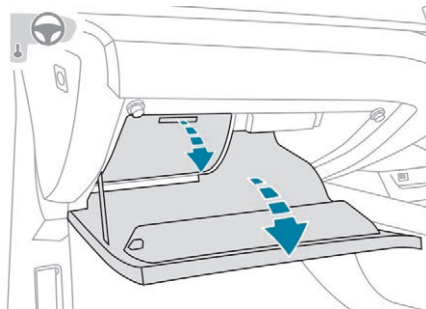
Access to the tools

The extraction tweezers are located behind the fusebox cover.



- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.

- ☞ Disengage the cover completely.
- ☞ Take the tweezers from their housing.



- ☞ Open the glove box.
- ☞ Press on the central handle of the fusebox cover.
- ☞ Lower the cover completely.
- ☞ Take the tweezers from their housing.

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ identify the cause of the failure and correct it,
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers,
- ☞ immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition,
- ☞ identify the defective fuse using the current allocation tables and diagrams.

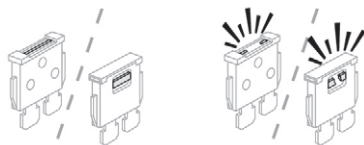
To work on a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament,
- ☞ always replace the defective fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause a malfunction (risk of fire).

If the fault recurs after replacing a fuse, have the electrical system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The fuse allocation tables and the corresponding diagrams are available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The replacement of a fuse not shown in the allocation tables may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Good

Faulty



Tweezers

Fuses in the dashboard

The fusebox is placed in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

To access the fuses, follow the same procedure as that described for accessing the tools for changing fuses.

For more information on **Access to the tools**, refer to the corresponding section.

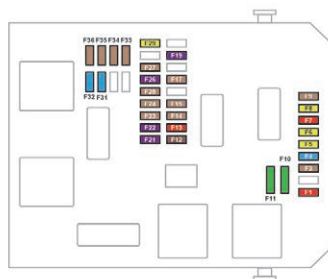
Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment. Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! PEUGEOT will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

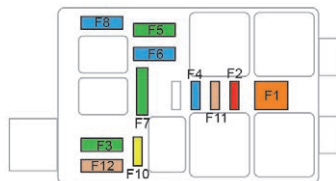
Fuse tables

Box 1



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	10 A	"Electrochrome" mirrors.
F3	5 A	Adaptive 3D rear lamps.
F4	15 A	Horn.
F5	20 A	Rear screenwash pump (SW).
F6	20 A	Front screenwash pump.
F7	10 A	Rear USB sockets.
F8	20 A	Rear wiper (SW).
F10	30 A	Central locking.
F11	30 A	Tailgate locking/unlocking.
F14	5 A	Emergency and assistance calls, alarm control unit.
F24	5 A	Hi-Fi amplifier.
F27	5 A	Alarm siren.
F29	20 A	Touch screen audio system.
F31	15 A	Rear 12 V socket.
F32	15 A	Cigarette lighter/Front 12 V socket.

Box 2



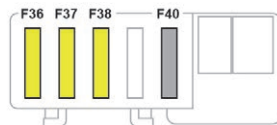
Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F2	10 A	Heated door mirrors.
F3	40 A	Front one-touch windows.
F4	15 A	Driver's door control panel, memorisation of electric seats.
F5	40 A	Rear one-touch windows.
F6	15 A	12 V socket in boot.
F7	30 A	Heated seats.
F10	20 A	Trailer interface unit.
F12	25 A	Hi-Fi amplifier.

Passenger compartment fusebox



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F36	30 A	Panoramic sunroof.
F37	30 A	Panoramic sunroof blind.
F38	30 A	Electric seats.
F39	30 A	Motorised tailgate unit.
F40	25 A	Additional heating.

Trailer interface unit

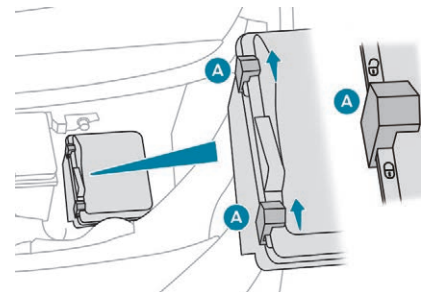


Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F36	20 A	Brake lamps, reversing lamps (trailer).
F37	20 A	Sidelamps, direction indicators (trailer).
F38	20 A	Interior lighting (caravan).
F40	2 A	Audible signal (trailer).

Engine compartment fuses

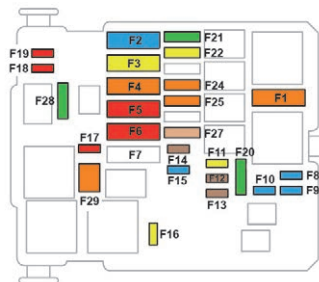
The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

Access to the fuses



- ☞ Release the two latches **A**.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse.
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover carefully then engage the two latches **A**, to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.

Fuse tables



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F5	50 A	Right-hand direction indicators, front right-hand sidelamps, right-hand brake lamps, left-hand reversing lamps, right-hand foglamps.
F16	20 A	Daytime running lamps.
F18	10 A	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F19	10 A	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F24	40 A	Trailer interface unit.
F27	25 A	Right-hand dipped beam headlamp, right-hand reversing lamps, left-hand foglamps, rear left-hand sidelamps, third brake lamp.
F29	40 A	Windscreen wipers.
F32	80 A	Left-hand dipped beam headlamp, static cornering lamps, direction indicator side repeaters, left-hand direction indicators, front left-hand and rear right-hand sidelamps, left-hand brake lamps, number plate lamps.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

General points

Lead-acid starter batteries



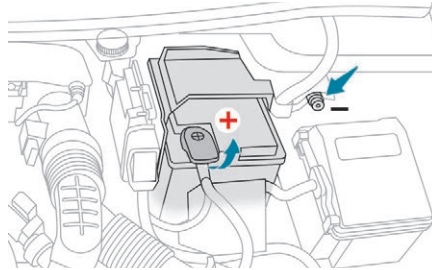
Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste. Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.



Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery. All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire. Wash your hands afterwards.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.



For access to the (+) terminal:

- ☞ unlock the bonnet by activating the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.
- ☞ raise the bonnet.

(+) Positive terminal.

It has a quick-release clamp.

(-) Negative terminal.

As the battery's negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is placed near the battery.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump lead cables or a battery booster.



Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.

Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

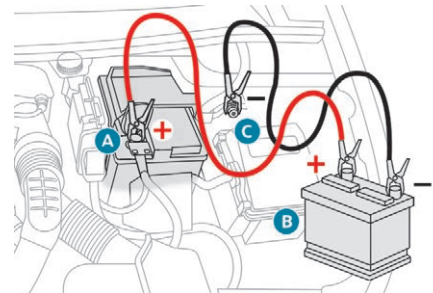
Check beforehand that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a minimum capacity equal to that of the discharged battery.

The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.

Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).

Make sure that the jump leads are not close to moving parts of the engine (fan, belts, etc.).

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- ☞ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.

- ⚙️ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the positive terminal (+) of slave battery **B** or the booster.
 - ⚙️ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of slave battery **B** or the booster (or the earth point on the other vehicle).
 - ⚙️ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
 - ⚙️ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
 - ⚙️ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
- If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- ⚙️ Wait for it to return to idle.
 - ⚙️ Disconnect the jump lead cables **in reverse order**.
 - ⚙️ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
 - ⚙️ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

! If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you only use your vehicle for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

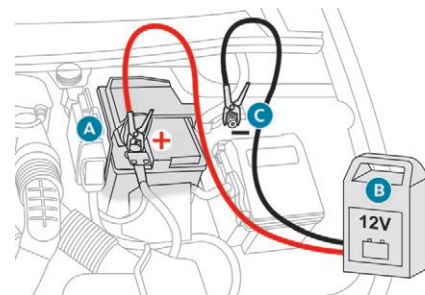
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If you wish to charge your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

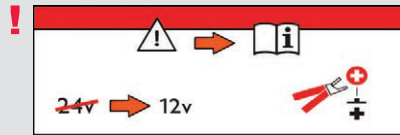
! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ⚙️ Switch off the ignition.
- ⚙️ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- ⚙️ Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ⚙️ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ⚙️ Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- ⚙️ Connect the cables of the charger **B** as follows:
 - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
 - the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ⚙️ At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.



If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

! Never try to charge a frozen battery – risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or by a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and that the container has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

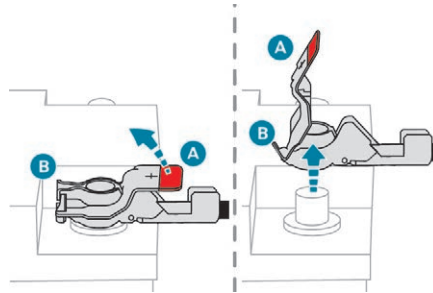
Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ close all openings (doors, tailgate, windows, sunroof),
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.),
- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

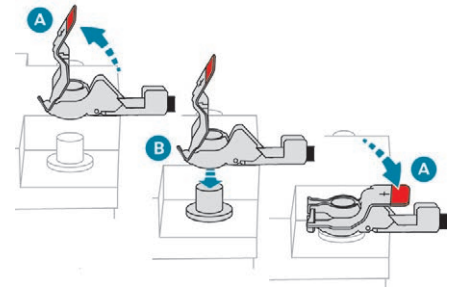
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- ☞ Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Refit the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

! Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Following reconnection

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, in order to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

However, if minor problems persist following this operation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise certain systems, such as:

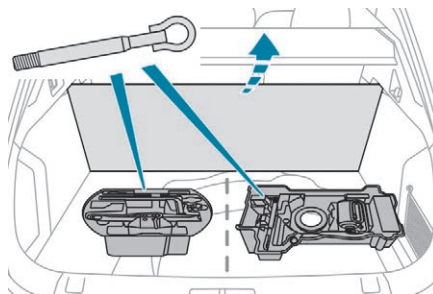
- the electronic key,
- the sunroof and its electric blind,
- the electric windows,
- the date and time,
- the preset radio stations.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the next engine start. In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

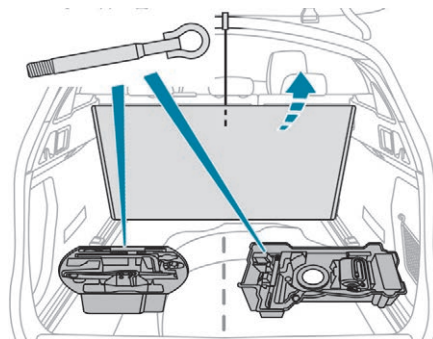
Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing device.

Access to the tools



Hatchback

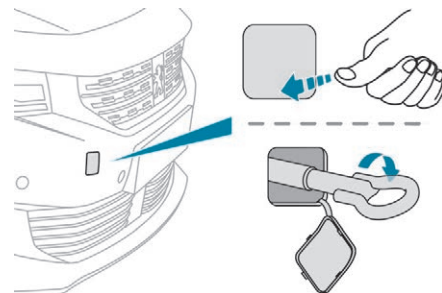


SW

The towing eye is stored in a toolbox, under the boot floor.

For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing your vehicle



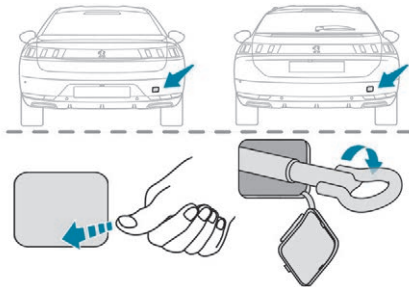
- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- ☞ Release the cover to the right and then downwards.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.

! ☞ Put the gearbox into neutral. Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission, etc.) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

! Automatic gearbox: never tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground with the engine off.

- ☞ Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive slowly over a short distance only.

Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- ☞ Pull the cover downwards.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive slowly over a short distance only.

! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; rope and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- when it is not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, engine running,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towbar, etc. available.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

i The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also given on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

! High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

! Towing by a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect roadholding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of approximately 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

i If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine is allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

Engines and towed loads – Petrol

Engines	THP 150 EAT6	THP 165 EAT6	PureTech 180 S&S EAT8		PureTech 225 S&S EAT8	
Gearboxes	Automatic 6-speed	Automatic 6-speed	Automatic 8-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Codes	KUM (EP6FDTMD AT6III)	KNM (EP6FDTM AT6III)	LL1 (EP6FADTXD ATN8 STT)		LK1 (EP6FADTX ATN8 STT)	
Model codes Hatchback: FB... SW: FE...	5GXV	5GYV	5GFR		5GGR	
Body styles	Hatchback	Hatchback	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW
Cylinder capacity (cm ³)	1,598	1,598	1,598		1,598	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	110	121	133		165	
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded		Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	600	600	1,600	1,600	1,600	1,600
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600	600	745	745	745	745
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	75	75	75	75	75

Engines and towed loads – Diesel

Engines	BlueHDi 130 S&S BVM6		BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8	
Gearboxes	Manual 6-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Codes	MAK (DV5RC ML6C STT)		MA1 (DV5RC ATN8 STT)	
Model codes Hatchback: FB... SW: FE...	YHZJ		YHZR	
Body styles	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW
Cylinder capacity (cm³)	1,499		1,499	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96		96	
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,500	1,500	1,500	1,500
Unbraked trailer (kg)	745	745	745	745
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	75	75	75

Engines and towed loads – Diesel

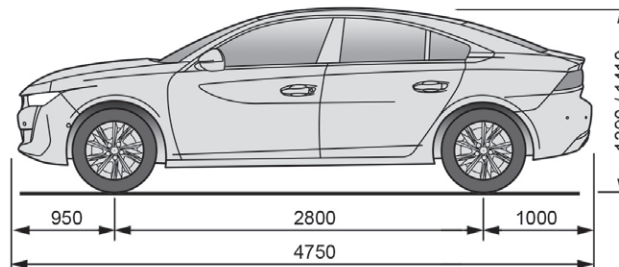
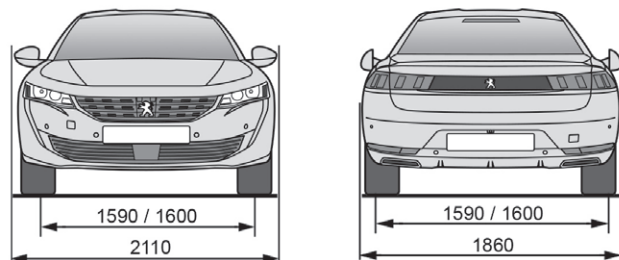
Engines	BlueHDi 160 S&S EAT8		BlueHDi 180 S&S EAT8		HDi 180 EAT8	
Gearboxes	Automatic 8-speed		Automatic 8-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Codes	PH1 (DW10FCC AMN8 STT)		KA1 (DW10FC AMN8 STT)		KA9 (DW10FC AMN8)	
Model codes Hatchback: FB... SW: FE...	EHYR		EHZR		EHZN	
Body styles	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW
Cylinder capacity (cm ³)	1,997		1,997		1,997	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	120		133		133	
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel		Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,800	1,800	1,800	1,800	600 1,800*	600 1,800*
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750	750	750	750	600 750*	600 750*
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	75	75	75	75	75

* Only for Russia.

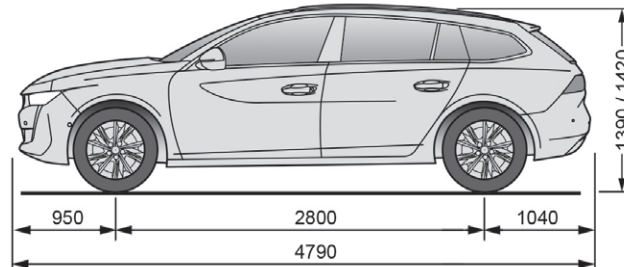
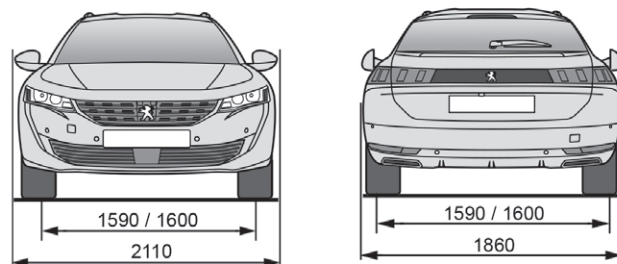
Dimensions (in mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

Hatchback

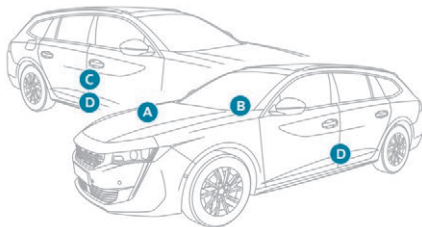
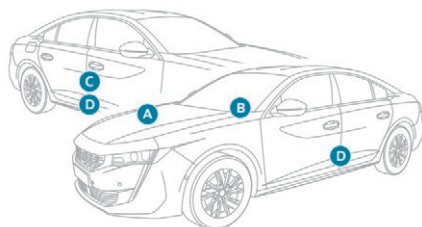


SW



Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification and research of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.

This number is engraved on the bodywork structure.

B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.

The number is on a label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.

This tamperproof label is affixed to the right-hand door aperture.

It bears the following information:

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the gross vehicle weight (GVW),
- the gross train weight (GTW),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tyres/paint code label.

This label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.

It bears the following information about the tyres:

- the tyre pressures, unladen and laden,
- the tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices,
- the spare tyre pressure.

It also indicates the paint colour code.

i The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.



PEUGEOT Connect Radio



Multimedia audio system – Applications – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents	
First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Applications	5
Radio	6
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	8
Media	9
Telephone	10
Settings	16
Frequently asked questions	18

i The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

i The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. For pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, you can switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page, or by using a finger, sliding the pages to the left or to the right.

Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.

Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

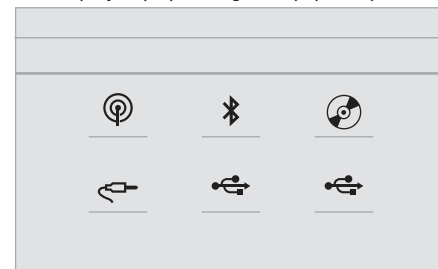
! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type. To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product. Do not use sharp objects on the screen. Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper banner of the touch screen:

- Repeat of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Reminder of the privacy information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Selecting the sound source (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- CD player (depending on equipment).



i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1



Radio:

Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Mute/Restore the sound (depending on equipment).

Or

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Decrease volume.

SRC

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.



Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

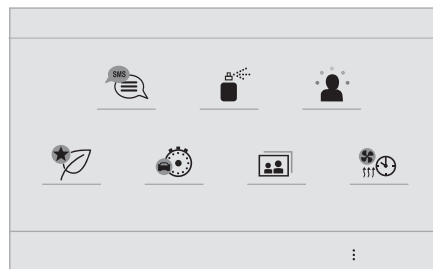
Menus

Applications

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Access configurable equipment.

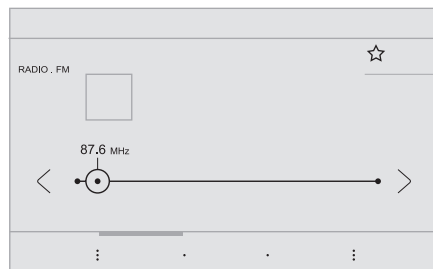


Radio Media

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Select an audio source or radio station.

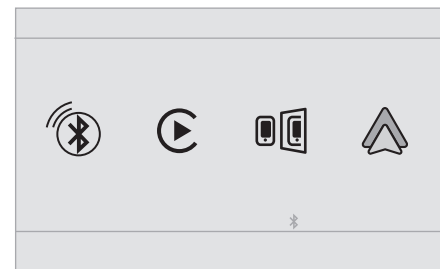


Telephone

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

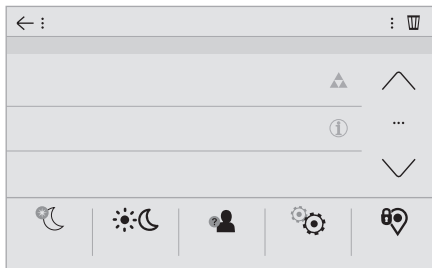


Settings

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Driving

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

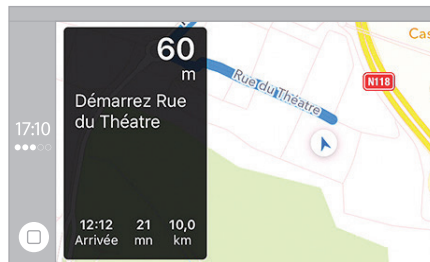


Navigation

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Configure the navigation and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

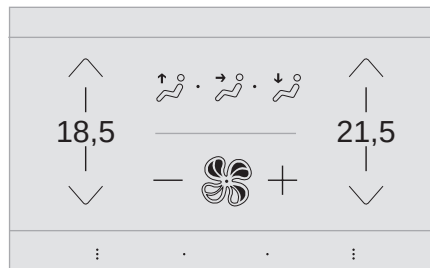


Air conditioning

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp; .png.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press **"Photos"**.



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.



Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "SMS".



Select the "SMS" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to search and select a recipient.



Select the "Quick messages" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to write a new message.



Press the basket alongside the selected message to delete it.



Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.



Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.



Press this button to write a new message.



Press the basket to delete the message.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz
KHz

Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is filled in, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.



The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of this RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information



The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**News**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Playing TA messages



The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Sound**" or "**Voice**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

i In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

! The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

i Onboard audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different "multiplex/ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB Tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**FM-DAB Tracking**".

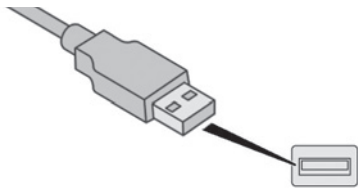


Press in the grey zone to confirm.

i If "FM-DAB Tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM, or if the "FM-DAB Tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media USB



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

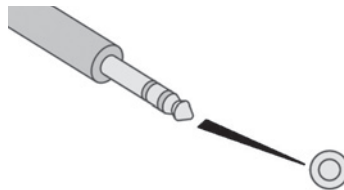
The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Operation of controls is via the portable device.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated; first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts); you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Device management is done by the audio system controls.

Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ? . ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen. The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"MirrorLink™"** function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to display the secondary page.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.

As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

i On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



On your smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.

The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.



Press **"Android Auto"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"Android Auto"** function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® is started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"TEL"** button to display the secondary page.



Press **"Android Auto"** to start the application in the system.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.



There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press **"Bluetooth search"**.
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

i If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

i Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

i On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Bluetooth connection"** to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Internet data"**.



Select one or more profiles.



Press **"OK"** to confirm.

! The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.



The available services depend on the network, SIM card, and device Bluetooth compatibility. Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Bluetooth connection"** to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Or



Press "**End call**".

Making a call



Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.

Parking the vehicle.

Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.



Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

Settings

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.



Press "**OK**" to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Adjust brightness



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (depending on version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to return to the initial settings.



Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the "**System info**" tab to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Press the "**Privacy**" tab,
or



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the privacy data mode.

- Activate or deactivate:
- "No sharing (data, vehicle position)".
 - "Data sharing only"
 - "Sharing data and the vehicle position"

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".

Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press "**Animation**".

- ☒ Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".
- ☒ Select "**Animated transitions**".

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Select the language

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Language**" to change the language.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to save the time.

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

Press the back arrow to save the settings.

i The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".



Press this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your system.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and CarPlay do not work.	Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.	Use authentic USB cables to ensure compatibility.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start the engine to increase the charge of the battery.

PEUGEOT Connect Nav



GPS satellite navigation – Applications – Multimedia audio system – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents	
First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Voice commands	5
Navigation	13
Connected navigation	15
Applications	18
Radio	23
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	24
Media	25
Telephone	27
Settings	31
Frequently asked questions	33

i The different functions and settings described vary depending on the version and configuration of your vehicle.

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

i The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the menu buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

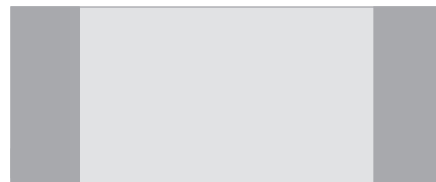
You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. Press the back arrow to go back a level. Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the side bars or in the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment):

- Repeat of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the "Notifications" of messages, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selecting the sound source (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- CD Player (depending on equipment).
- Video (depending on equipment).



i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, system voice commands.
Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Mute/Restore the sound (depending on equipment).
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Decrease volume.

SRC

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.



Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Connected navigation

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.

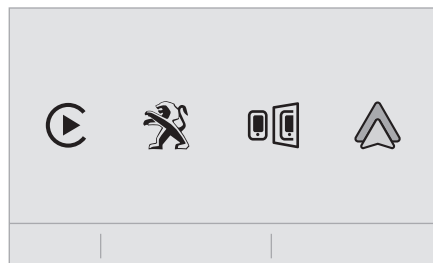


Applications

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ (available depending on the country) or Android Auto.
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

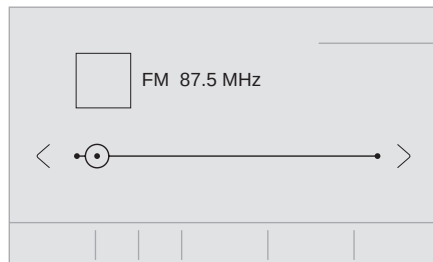


Radio Media

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

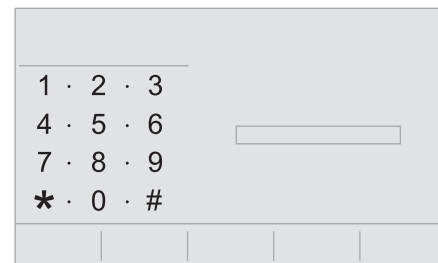


Telephone

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

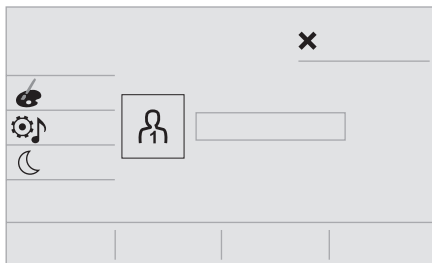


Settings

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Vehicle

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Air conditioning

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Voice commands

Steering mounted controls



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment). Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:

- **speak natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and sunroof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers not to speak.

First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:

"Navigate to address 11 regent street, London"

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:

"Play artist Madonna"

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:

"Call David Miller"

! The voice commands, with a choice of 17 languages (Arabic, Brazilian, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Farsi, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system. For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.
 Example: Guide to/Navigate to/Go to/...
 The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

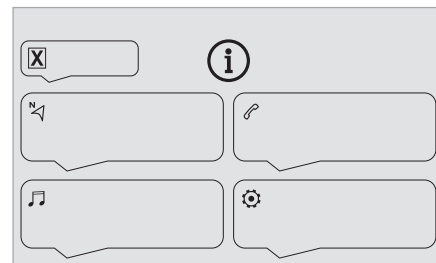
Information – Using the system



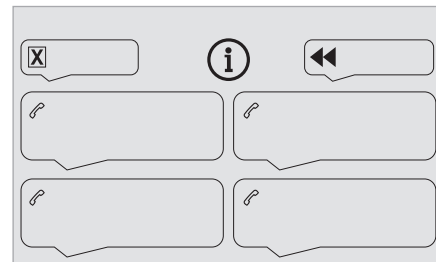
Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.



When the voice commands are activated, by briefly pressing the button help is displayed on the touchscreen, offering various menus and allowing you to interact with the system by voice.



Upon selecting a menu item you have a choice of commands.



Global voice commands

i These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".
	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
Set dialogue mode as novice – expert	
Select user 1/Select profile John	
Increase temperature	
Decrease temperature	

"Navigation" voice commands

i These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Navigate home	To plan a route, say "navigate to" followed by the address, the contact name or an intersection. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", "navigate to contact, John Miller", or "navigate to intersection of Regent Street, London". You can specify if it's a preferred address, or a Point of Interest. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", or "navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London". Or, you can just say, "navigate home". To see Points of Interest on a map, you can say things like "show POI hotels in Banbury". For more information say "help with points of interest" or "help with route guidance". To choose a destination, say something like "navigate to line three" or "select line two". If you can't find the destination but the street's right, say for example "select the street in line three". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address, Tennis club	
Navigate to contact, John Miller	
Navigate to address 11 regent street, London	
Tell me the remaining distance	You can say "stop" or "resume route guidance". To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". To learn more commands, try saying "help with navigation".
Tell me the remaining time	
Tell me the arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

Show POI "hotel" at the destination	To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury", "show nearby parking", "show hotel at the destination" or "show petrol station along the route". If you prefer to navigate directly to a point of interest, you can say "navigate to nearby petrol station". If you feel you are not being well understood, try to say the word "POI" in front of the point of interest. For example say "navigate to POI restaurant at the destination". To choose a POI, say something like "select line 2". If you've searched for a Point of Interest and don't see the one you're after, you can filter further by saying something like "select POI in line 2", or "select the city in line 3". You can also scroll through the list by saying "next page" or "previous page".
Show nearby POI petrol station"	
Navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London	
Navigate to POI petrol station along the route	

i Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

i These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Turn on source radio – Streaming Bluetooth – ...	You can select an audio source by saying "turn on source" followed by the device name. For example, "turn on source, Streaming Bluetooth", or "turn on source, radio". Use the command "play" to specify the type of music you'd like to hear. You can choose between "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Tune to channel BBC Radio 2	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say for example "tune to preset number five".
Tune to 98.5 FM	
Tune to preset number five	
What's playing?	To choose what you'd like to play, start by saying "play" and then the item. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play line 3" or "select line 2". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Play song Hey Jude	I'm not sure what you'd like to play. Please say "play" and then a song title, an album title, or an artist name. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play artist Madonna" or "play album Thriller". To select a line number from the display, say "select line two". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Play artist Madonna	
Play album Thriller	

i Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

i These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Call David Miller*	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting". To choose a contact, say something like "select line three". To move around the list say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Call voicemail*	
Display calls*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Text message" voice commands

i These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

i The "Text messages" voice commands function allows you to dictate and send an SMS.

Dictate your text taking care to make a short pause between each word. At the end of the operation, the voice recognition system will automatically create an SMS.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late	From the list of quick messages, say the name of the one you'd like to send. To move around the list you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Send SMS to John Miller, I'm just arriving Send SMS to David Miller at the office, don't wait for me	Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Listen to most recent message*	To hear your last message, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

i The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Enter address"**.



Select the **"Country"**.



Enter the **"City"**, the **"Street"** and the **"Number"** and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

OK

Press **"OK"** to select the **"Guidance criteria"**.

And/Or



Select **"See on map"** to select the **"Guidance criteria"**.

OK

Press **"OK"** to start navigation.

i Zoom out/zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

i In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the **"City"**, the **"Street"** and the **"Number"** on the virtual keyboard or take it from the list in **"Contact"** or in the **"History"** of addresses.

i Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

To a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"My destinations"**.

Select the **"Recent"** tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the **"Guidance criteria"**.

OK

Press **"OK"** to start navigation.

i Select **"Position"** to visualise the arrival point geographically.

To "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"My destinations"**.

Select the **"Preferred"** tab.



Select **"My home"**.

Or



Select **"My work"**.

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

Towards a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK

Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

To a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.



A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Touch the screen with a finger to go to the next image.



Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to display or enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.

Choose the type of coordinates:
DMS for: Degrees, Minutes, Seconds.
DD for: Degrees, Decimals.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "Longitude" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

i TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time. The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

i The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

Depending on version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

Network connection provided by the user



i For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the vehicle brand's internet website in your country.

Connected navigation connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem. **Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.**

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Applications" section).

Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect.

i This function is only available if it has been activated either via the "Notifications" or via the "Applications" menu.



Press "**Notifications**".



Select Wi-Fi to activate it.

OR



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".



Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

i Restrictions of use:

- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.



With the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.

i The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.

A Connected Services pack:

- Weather,
 - Filling stations,
 - Car park,
 - Traffic,
 - POI local search.
- A Danger zone pack (option).

i The processes and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

Settings specific to connected navigation

i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".

Select **"Map"**.

- ☒ Activate or deactivate:
 - **"Allow declaration of danger zones"**.
 - **"Guidance to final destination on foot"**
 - **"Display recommended speed"**

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select **"Alerts"**.

- ☒ Activate or deactivate **"Advise of car parks nearby"**.
- ☒ Activate or deactivate **"Filling station alert"**.
- ☒ Activate or deactivate **"Risk areas alert"**.



Next, select this button.

- ☒ Activate: **"Safety zones alert"**
- ☒ Activate: **"Give an audible warning"**
- ☒ Activate or deactivate **"Advise of POI 1 nearby"**.
- ☒ Activate or deactivate **"Advise of POI 2 nearby"**.

! For access to connected navigation, you must select the option: **"Authorise sending information"** in "Settings".

i You can access the "Notifications" at any time in the upper banner.

i The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Declaration of "Danger zones"

! To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should tick the option: **"Allow declaration of danger zones"**.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press the **"Declare a new danger zone"** button located in the side bars or the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment).



Select the option **"Type"** to choose the type of "danger zone".



Select the **"Speed"** option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press **"OK"** to save and distribute the information.

Authorise sending information



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"System settings"**.



Select the **"Privacy mode"** tab.



Activate or deactivate:

- **"No sharing (data, vehicle position)"**.
- **"Data sharing only"**
- **"Sharing data and the vehicle position"**

"Danger zones" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".



Select the "**System info**" tab.



Select "**View**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Select "**Update(s) due**".

i You can download the system and map updates from the website for the brand. The update procedure can also be found on the website.

i Once you have downloaded the updates, the installation on the vehicle must be done with the engine running and vehicle stationary.

Displaying the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

i The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with the **CarPlay**®, **MirrorLink**™ or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**®, **MirrorLink**™ or **Android Auto** functions.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.

As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



Press on "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.



On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

Available depending on the country of sale.



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.

The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



The **MirrorLink™** function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Android Auto smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen. The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the vehicle brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "Android Auto" function.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers is deactivated.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Vehicle apps



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Vehicle Apps**" to display the applications home page.

Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.

Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

i Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Bluetooth connection®

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.



To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select "**Search**".

The list of telephones detected is displayed.



If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.



Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

i The **"Mobile internet data"** profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone's Wi-Fi.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Wi-Fi network connection"**.



Select the **"Secured"** or **"Not secured"** or **"Stored"** tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the **"Key"** for the Wi-Fi network and the **"Password"**.

OK

Press **"OK"** to start the connection.



The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Share Wi-Fi connection"**.

Select the **"Activation"** tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And/Or

Select the **"Settings"** to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.



To protect against unauthorised access and make your systems as secure as possible, the use of a complex security code or password is recommended.

Managing connections



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Manage connection"**.

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Enter the values using the virtual keypad.
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

To change the waveband, press "Band..." displayed at the top right of the screen.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

i The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Playing TA messages



The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio



Digital radio provides higher quality reception. The different "multiplex/ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press "Band..." at the top right of the screen to display the **DAB** waveband.

DAB-FM auto tracking



"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**FM-DAB Tracking**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Station follow**".

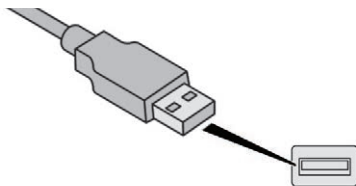
OK Press "OK".

i If "DAB-FM tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB-FM tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

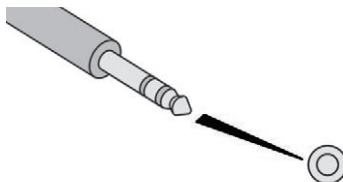
! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Operation of controls is via the portable device.

CD player

Depending on equipment

Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

Watching a video

! For safety reasons and because of required sustained attention of the driver, viewing a video is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary** and the ignition is switched on; as soon as movement resumes, the video stops.

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

 Video control commands are accessible only through the touchscreen.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Source**".



Select **Video** to start the video.



To remove the USB memory stick, press the pause button to stop the video, then remove the memory stick.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated; first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

 Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

 The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts). The default classification used is by artists. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

 The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied. Device management is done by the audio system controls. Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

 To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps. It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard. The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g.: " " ? . ; ù) in order to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

CD player (depending on equipment).
In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press **"Bluetooth search"**.

Or



Select **"Search"**.
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

i Activation of the profile; "**Mobile internet data**" is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

i On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part (with Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The available services depend on the network, SIM card, and device Bluetooth compatibility. Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted telephone button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted telephone button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**" on the touch screen.

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

i The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Received**" or "**Sent**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.



Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.
Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

Settings

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Distribution**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.



The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.



The **Ambience** (6 optional ambiances) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** audio settings are different and independent for each audio source. Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**". The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources. Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".



Onboard audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Profile settings



As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port. Select the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

 The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

 Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

 Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Distribution**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.



Resetting the system to "Factory Settings" activates English by default, as well as Fahrenheit degrees, and turns off daylight saving (summer) time.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Set time-date**".

Select **"Date"**.



Press this button to define the date.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.



Select the display format of the date.

i Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Setting the time-date"**.

Select **"Time"**.



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).



Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.

i The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Colour schemes

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select **"Colour schemes"**.



Select a colour scheme in the list then press **"OK"** to confirm.

i Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your system.

Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger zones" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.	When not navigating, the system announces all "Danger zones" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger zones" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger zone". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.
---	--	---

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD does not read DVDs. Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.

There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new media, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on the Brand's website (services).
The sound of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronising contacts are synchronising the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass:, Treble:, Balance) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start then vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu/Options/Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

180° rear vision 182

A

ABS 101
 Accessories 98, 127, 204
 Access to rear seats 57
 Active Lane Keeping Assistance 19, 170-171
 Active Safety Brake 18, 165-166, 168
 Active Suspension Control 136
 Adaptive LED Technology 36
 AdBlue® 16, 24-25, 210
 AdBlue® tank 211
 Additive, Diesel 208
 Adjusting head restraints 57
 Adjusting seats 57-59
 Adjusting the air distribution 68-70
 Adjusting the air flow 68-70
 Adjusting the date 34, 17, 32
 Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel 61
 Adjusting the lumbar support 58
 Adjusting the seat belt height 103
 Adjusting the temperature 68
 Adjusting the time 34, 17, 33
 Advice on care and maintenance 210
 Advice on driving 124-125
 Airbags 20, 105-106, 108, 112
 Airbags, curtain 107-108
 Airbags, front 106-108
 Airbags, lateral 107-108
 Air conditioning 66, 69
 Air conditioning, automatic 70
 Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic 67
 Air intake 68, 70
 Air vents 65
 Alarm 44, 46
 Amplifier, audio 76
 Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 100-101

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) 100-101
 Anti-theft / Immobiliser 40, 125
 Apple CarPlay connection 12, 18
 Armrest, front 78
 Armrest, rear 80
 Assistance call 99-100
 Assistance, emergency braking 100-101, 168
 Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 9, 25-26

B

Battery 202, 208
 Battery, remote control 40, 42, 73
 Bicycle carrier 204
 Blind 53-55
 Blind spot detection 170, 174-176
 Blind spot monitoring system, active 170
 BlueHDi 24-26, 210
 Bluetooth (hands-free) 13-14, 27-28
 Bluetooth (telephone) 13-15, 27-28
 Bonnet 204
 Bonnet, active 109
 Boot 47-48, 50, 85
 Brake discs 209
 Brakes 12, 17, 209
 Braking assistance system 100-101
 Braking, automatic
 emergency 18, 165-166, 168
 Braking, emergency 131
 Brightness 16

C

Cable, audio 25
 Cable, Jack 25
 Capacity, fuel tank 198
 Cap, fuel filler 198
 CD 9, 25
 CD, MP3 9, 25

Central locking 38, 43
 Changing the remote control battery 42
 Charger, induction 77
 Charger, wireless 77
 CHECK 26
 Checking the engine oil level 24
 Checking the levels 205-207
 Checks 205, 208-209
 Checks, routine 208-209
 Child lock 122-123
 Children 117-120
 Children (safety) 122-123
 Child seats 104, 110-112, 116-117
 Child seats, conventional 116-117
 Child seats, i-Size 121-122
 Child seats, ISOFIX 118-120
 Cigarette lighter 75
 Cleaning (advice) 210
 Closing the boot 36, 39, 48
 Closing the doors 36, 38-39, 46
 Comfort mode 136
 Configuration, vehicle 29-33
 Connection, Bluetooth 13-15, 21-22, 27-28
 Connection, MirrorLink 11-12, 19
 Connection, Wi-Fi network 22
 Connectivity 76
 Container, AdBlue® 211
 Control, back-up boot release 48
 Control, back-up door release 41
 Control, heated seats 59-60
 Controls, steering mounted 131-135
 Courtesy lamps 79
 Cover, load space 81-82
 Cruise control 145, 148-155, 159, 161
 Cruise control, adaptive 151, 153
 Cruise control by speed limit recognition 145
 Cruise control, adaptive with
 Stop & Go function 145, 152-155, 159, 161
 Cup holder 74

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) –
 Digital radio 8, 24
 Date (setting) 34, 17, 32
 Deactivating the passenger airbag 106-107, 112
 Deadlocking 36, 39
 Defrosting 70-71
 Defrosting, front 70
 Demisting 70
 Demisting, front 70
 Demisting, rear 71
 Demisting, rear screen 71
 Dials and gauges 8
 Dimensions 242
 Dipstick 24, 206-207
 Display screen, instrument panel 138
 Distance Alert 18, 165-167
 Door pockets 74
 Doors 46
 Doors, rear 123
 Drive Assist Plus 151
 Driver's attention warning 169
 Driving 56-57
 Driving modes 136
 Driving positions (storing) 59
 Dynamic stability control (DSC) 18, 100-102

E

ECO mode 136
 Economy mode 202
 Electronic brake force distribution
 (EBFD) 100-101
 Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 100-101
 Emergency call 99-100
 Emergency switching off 127
 Emissions control system, SCR 210
 Energy economy mode 202
 Engine compartment 205
 Engine, Diesel 14, 197, 205, 240-241

Engine, petrol 197, 205, 239
 Engines 238-241
 Environment 40, 73
 ESC (electronic stability control) 100
 Extended traffic sign recognition 145-146

F

Fatigue detection 169
 Filling the AdBlue® tank 211
 Filling the fuel tank 197-199
 Filter, air 208
 Filter, oil 208
 Filter, particle 207-208
 Filter, passenger compartment 66, 208
 Fitting roof bars 203-204
 Fittings, boot 81
 Fittings, interior 74-75
 Fittings, rear 80
 Flap, fuel filler 198-199
 Foglamps, rear 21
 Folding the rear seats 63-64
 Frequency (radio) 23-24
 Fuel 197
 Fuel tank 198-199
 Full Park Assist 188

G

Gauge, fuel 198
 Gearbox, automatic 131-136, 138-139, 209
 Gearbox, manual ... 131, 135-136, 138-139, 209
 Gear lever, automatic gearbox 131, 133
 Gear lever, manual gearbox 131
 Gear shift indicator 138
 Glove box 75
 G.P.S. 14
 Grab handles 57, 74

H

Hands-free access 50
 Hands-free tailgate 48, 50
 Hazard warning lamps 98
 Headlamps, automatic dipping 22
 Headlamps, dipped beam 22
 Headlamps, main beam 22
 Head restraints, front 57
 Head restraints, rear 63-64
 Heating 65, 71-73
 Heating, additional 71-73
 Heating, programmable 71-73
 Hi-Fi system 76
 Hill start assist 135-136
 Horn 99

I

i-Cockpit® amplify function 60, 64-65
 Ignition 127, 29
 Ignition on 127
 Immobiliser, electronic 125
 Indicator, AdBlue® range 24-25
 Indicator, coolant temperature 24
 Indicator, engine oil level 24, 26
 Inflating tyres 209
 Instrument panel 8-9, 26-28
 Internet browser 21
 ISOFIX 119
 ISOFIX mountings 118

J

Jack 25

K

Key	35, 40-41
Key, electronic.....	37-39
Keyless Entry and Starting	37, 39, 125-126
Key not recognised	127
Key with remote control	125
Kit, hands-free	13-14, 27-28

L

Labels, identification.....	243
Lamp, boot	85
Lamps, front	210
Lamps, rear	210
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)	19
Lane Positioning Assist	151, 161-163, 165
Leather (care).....	210
Level, AdBlue®	207
Level, brake fluid.....	207
Level, Diesel additive	207-208
Level, engine coolant.....	24, 207
Level, engine oil	24, 206-207
Levels and checks	205-207
Level, screenwash fluid	207
Lighting dimmer	27
Lighting, ambient interior	79
Lighting, guide-me home	37
Lighting, interior	79
Loading	203-204
Load reduction mode	201
Locating your vehicle	36
Locking.....	36, 39-40
Locking from the inside.....	43
Locking the doors	48
Long objects, transporting	80
Low fuel level	198
Lumbar	58

M

Maintenance (advice).....	210
Map reading lamps	79
Markings, identification.....	243
Massage function	60
Massage, multi-point	60
Mat	78
Memorising a speed	151
Menu	12
Menus (audio)	4-5, 4-5
Messages.....	30
Messages, quick	30
Mirror, rear view	62
Mirrors, door.....	61-62, 71, 174-176
Mirror, vanity	75
Misfuel prevention.....	199
Motorised tailgate	48-50
Mountings, ISOFIX	118

N

Net, high load retaining.....	83-84
Night Vision.....	21-22

O

Obstacle detection	176
Oil change	206-207
Oil consumption	206-207
Oil, engine	206-207
On-board tools	85
Opening the bonnet	204
Opening the boot	37, 47
Opening the doors	37, 46
Opening the fuel filler flap.....	198
Opening the windows	35

P

Pads, brake	209
Paint	243
Paint colour code	243
Parcel shelf, rear.....	81
Park Assist.....	184
Parking brake	209
Parking brake, electric	12-13, 16-17, 19, 128-131
Parking sensors, audible and visual.....	176
Parking sensors, front.....	177
Parking sensors, rear.....	177
Personalisation	8-9
PEUGEOT Connect Nav.....	1
PEUGEOT Connect Radio	1
Plates, identification.....	243
Player, Apple®	9, 26
Player, MP3 CD.....	25
Player, USB	75, 9, 25
Port, USB	75-76, 80, 9, 25
Pre-heater, Diesel.....	14
Pressures, tyres.....	209
Pre-tensioning seat belts	104
Profiles	16, 31
Programmable cruise control	148
Protecting children.....	106-107, 110-112, 117-120

R

Radio	6-7, 9, 23, 25
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting – DAB)	8, 24
Range, AdBlue.....	24-25
RDS	7, 23-24
Rear screen, demisting.....	71
Recirculation, air	68, 70
Reduction of electrical load	201
Regeneration of the particle filter	208
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system.....	141-142

Reinitialising the remote control	42
Remote control.....	35-36, 38-40
Removing the mat.....	78
Replacing the air filter.....	208
Replacing the oil filter	208
Replacing the passenger compartment filter	208
Reservoir, screenwash	207
Resetting the trip recorder.....	27
Reset trip.....	27-28
Rev counter.....	8
Reversing camera.....	179-181
Roof bars.....	203-204

S

Safety, children	106-107, 110-112, 117-120
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel).....	208
Screen menu map.....	12
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction).....	210
Seat belts	12, 103-104, 116
Seat belts, rear.....	103-104
Seats, electric	58-59
Seats, front.....	57-59
Seats, heated.....	59-60
Seats, rear.....	63-64
Selector, gear.....	131-135
Serial number, vehicle	243
Service indicator.....	23, 26
Service (warning lamp)	13
Servicing	23
Settings, equipment.....	29-33
Settings, system.....	16, 32
Side parking sensors	177
Ski flap	80
Snow chains.....	141, 202
Socket, 12 V accessory	75, 80, 84
Socket, auxiliary.....	9, 25
Socket, Jack.....	25

Speakers	76
Speed limiter	145-148, 151
Speed limit recognition	142, 144
Speedometer	8
Sport mode	136
Stability control (ESC).....	100-103
Starting a Diesel engine	197
Starting the vehicle.....	13, 16-17, 19, 124-126, 132-135
Starting using another battery	127
Station, radio.....	6-7, 23-24
Steering mounted controls, audio	3, 3
Steering wheel, adjustment	61
Stopping the vehicle.....	13, 16-17, 19, 124, 126, 132-135
Stop & Start	21, 29, 67, 70, 138-139, 198, 204, 208
STOP (warning lamp).....	11
Storage.....	74-75, 78, 80-81
Storage box.....	85
Storage compartments	74
Storage wells	81, 85
Storing driving positions	59
Stowing rings	81, 84
Sunroof, panoramic	53-55
Sunshine sensor	66
Sun visor	75
Suspension with variable vibration reduction.....	136
Synchronising the remote control.....	42

T

Tailgate.....	47
Tank, fuel.....	198-199
Technical data.....	239-241
Telephone	77, 13-15, 27-30
Temperature, coolant.....	11, 24
Ticket holder	74

Time (setting)	34, 17, 33
TMC (Traffic info)	15
Tool box.....	85
Topping-up AdBlue®.....	211
Total distance recorder	26-27
Touch screen.....	29, 31-33, 76, 1, 1
Towbar.....	102-103, 125, 199
Towed loads	238-241
Traction control (ASR)	18, 100-102
Traffic information (TMC).....	15
Trailer	102-103, 125, 199
Trailer stability assist (TSA).....	102-103
Trajectory control systems.....	100-101
Trip computer	27-28
Trip distance recorder.....	27
Tyres.....	209
Tyre under-inflation detection.....	20, 140

U

Under-inflation (detection)	140
Unlocking	35, 37
Unlocking from the inside	43
Unlocking the boot.....	37-38
Unlocking the doors.....	48
Unlocking the tailgate	37-38
Updating the date.....	34, 17, 32
Updating the time.....	34, 17, 33
USB.....	9, 25

V

Ventilation	65-66, 71, 73
Visibility	70
Vision, 180° forward	182
Visiopark 1	180
Visiopark 1 – Visiopark 2	179, 181
Voice commands	5-8, 10-12

W

Warning and indicator lamps	10
Warning lamp, airbag.....	20
Warning lamp, braking system	12, 17
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater	14
Warning lamp, low fuel level	14
Warning lamp, parking brake.....	12
Warning lamps	10, 26
Warning lamp, Service.....	13
Warning lamp, STOP	11
Warnings and indicators	11
Washing (advice).....	210
Weights	238-241
Welcome lighting.....	37
Wheel, spare.....	209
Window controls	52-53
Windscreen, heated.....	71
Wipers	22

Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.



PEUGEOT



AUTOMOBILES PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 7, rue Henri Sainte-Claire Déville - 92500 RUEIL-MALMAISON
<http://www.peugeot.com>

Société anonyme au capital de 172.711.770 € - R.C.S.NANTERRE : 552 144 503

Printed in the EU
Anglais
03-18

